

**101** She **determines independently** ( of anybody )  
 - `pen -  
 the **final date** for **submission of** proposals.

The **deadline for submission** is so soon that no one  
 will **have** the **opportunity** to **make submissions** to this **bill**.

**Complaints** must be **submitted within** the **time limit /**  
**before deadline**, and late **submissions** will be  
**rejected / not be considered / receive no consideration**.

**For the sake of appearance / for appearances' sake**,  
 the enchantress **argues for** ( voting for ) her proposal

**10** before making the council **have / take a vote** ( on it ).

She **signals** to the **councillors** to be **contented**.  
 kên`tentid  
 Having **signalled** the **voters** to be **content** and **obedient**,  
 kên`tent  
 she **signals** that they must **vote for / in favour of** the bill.

They all **wait for the signal** to **vote for / i favour of** her  
 so everybody **waits for** her to **make a signal**.

Nobody **signals** their **discontent(ment)** by refusing to vote,  
 - `tent  
 or by **voting against** her.

Her voters **signify** their approval and **content(<ment)**

at a **prearranged / predetermined sign** or **signal**, as soon as  
 pri-ê`reind\$ð  
**20** she **gives the signal** for approval, arranged **in advance**.

As everybody **signifies** their **agreement with** a **contented**  
**nod**, and nobody **signifies** a contrary intention,  
 the vote has a **predictable** result.

Her proposal **is met with / wins unanimous approval**.  
 ju~`nanimês  
 By means of the voters **obedience to** the enchantress,  
 the bill **is passed unanimously / gets all the votes**.

At the **announcement** of the **unanimous vote**,  
 she **has** a **smug expression** on her **face / in** her **eyes**.

After the **passing of** the bill by **common / general consent**,

**30** all council members **signify that they agree by nodding**.

As they all **agree with** the enchantress **on / about** the bill,  
 they **nod to signify** they are **agreed on signing** the bill  
**into law : by common / general assent** a great law.

**Signifying** her approval **with a gracious** smile, the en-  
 chantress **presents** the **statute to** the council **for signature**.

The council **are signatories** to the statute as well as  
 the enchantress **is a signatory of** this piece of **legislation**.

As they **sign** the statute **into statute law**, she has  
 a look of **self-satisfaction** as she grins **smugly** and **smirks**.  
 '... -` -`

\* bestemme ngt. \* uafhængigt ( af ng. )  
 på egen hånd

\* sidste dato / frist ( for ) \* indgivelse / -levering  
 / ind- / fremsendelse af ngt. \*

\* & sidste frist for ngt. \*

\* have mulighed \* komme med indlæg til > \* lovforslag  
 for at -

\* klage \* indgive / -levere \* indenfor > \* tidsfrist  
 / -sende ngt.

\* før sidste frist \* indgivelse, indlevering  
 indsendelse \*

\* afvist \* ikke komme i betragtning \*

\* for et syns skyld

\* argumenter for ( at ) ngt.

\* holde / tage ( en ) afstemning ( om ngt. )

\* signalere til ng. om at - \* rådsmedlem \* tilfreds  
 lykkelig

\* = \* stemmeberettiget ( person ) \* = \* lydig  
 vælger

\* signalere at - \* stemme for ngt.

\* vente på ngt. \* signalet til at - \* ... for ng.

\* ... på ( at ) ng. \* lave et signal  
 gøre tegn

\* signalere / \* utilfredshed  
 tilkendegive ngt.

\* stemme imod ng.

\* tilkendegive ngt. \* tilfredshed

\* ved ngt. \* forudtalet \* tegn \* signal

\* give signal til ngt. \* på forhånd

\* tilkendegive ngt. \* samtykke \* med \* tilfreds  
 tilslutning lykkelig

\* nik \*

\* forudsigeligt

\* mødes med / vinde > \* enstemmig \* godkendelse

\* lydighed overfor ng-

\* vedtaget \* enstemmigt \* stemme

\* kundgørelse \* = \* valg (-resultat )

\* have > \* selvtilfreds \* udtryk \* i ansigtet \* i øjnene  
 / -god ( ~ ansigtsudtryk )

\* vedtagelse \* bred enighed

\* tilkendegive / vise at - \* være enig \* ved at nikke

\* være enig med ng. om ngt.

\* nikke for at > \* være enige > \* underskrive ngt. >  
 tilkendegive at - om at-

\* til at blive ngt. \* ~ efter alles mening

\* tilkendegive ngt. med ngt. \* venligt ( smil )

\* presentere / \* udfærdiget \* til underskrift  
 fremlægge ngt. for ng. lovkompleks

\* underskriver af

\* = \* lovgivning  
 / -sforberedelse

\* underskrive ngt. til ngt. \* vedtagen lovgivning

\* selvtilfredshed \* smørret \* smiske, grine / smile >  
 selvtilfreds / fjoget / smørret

## 102 Feeling a sense of superiority, having a self-satisfied

**smirk** on her face, the enchantress **signs** the law.

Her **signature** is **valid** even if it's totally **illegible**.

The **signing** of the statute is a **signal victory**.

Although she doesn't **care** to hide a **smug expression**,  
nobody **sees through** the deceiver and her **smugness**.

After the **passage** of the bill, the council at once  
**sign over** property to her **without further / more ado**.

Having a **smug** smile on her **smug face**,

**10** she is / looks **smug** about her **signal** achievement.

As she **makes** a **fortune**, the cheat is a **signal** success.

Money **incarnates** the enchantress' greed.

The problems don't **appear until after** a couple of weeks.

You can **credibly describe** the town as a **madhouse**.

**Unhappiness** appears below / beneath the surface.

When the **helpless** townspeople were **bewitched**  
by her **portentous enchantment**, they **couldn't help it**.  
på~tentês  
Eventually everybody has a **sense** of **helplessness**.

They all have a **horrible feeling** of **helplessness**.

**20** It's natural to **feel helpless** against such **abuse**.

The townfolks seem **helpless victims** of her magic.

**None** of them **could help it: it couldn't be helped**.

The worst part is being **helpless** to change anything.

**Abandon hope** all ye that enter here.

The situation **looks dire**: It seems a **hopeless** situation.

**There is no help** for it (eE): **it's past help**.

They shall have to face the result of their **subservience**.  
- `sê~ -

Because of their **inability** to resist the enchantress' sexual  
**allure** and the **allure** of her charm, many townsmen

**30** have been **lured into** ( playing ) a **subservient role**.

Unable to resist her **alluring** charm and promises,

**the whole town** has been **subservient** to the enchantress.

Unable to resist **the lure** of her **enchanting** company,  
everybody has considered their own needs **subservient**.

People didn't **take** their own needs **into consideration**  
as they considered their needs **subservient** to those of  
the enchantress.

As she has **argued** everybody **into humouring** her,  
it's **all in all / altogether** a **victory** for the enchantress.

\* føle > \* fornemmelse \* overlegenhed \* selvtilfreds  
af ngt.

\* fjoget / smørret { grin / smil \* underskrive ngt. \* lov

\* underskrift \* gyldig \* ulæselig

\* underskrivelse af ngt. \* bemærkelsesværdig \* sejr  
eklatant

\* bekymre sig om at - \* selvtilfreds \* udtryk

\* gennemskue ngt. \* -hed

\* vedtagelse

\* ... ngt. til \* uden videre postyr / ståhej

\* selvtilfreds- / -god \* i sit ... ansigt  
/ -behagelig

\* være / forekomme ... over ngt. \* bemærkelsesværdig  
eklatant

\* skabe sig > \* formue \* =

\* konkretisere  
være det håndgribelige udtryk for

\* opstå \* før efter ngt.

\* vise sig

\* troværdigt \* beskrive ngt. som \* galehus

\* ulykkelighed \* vise sig \* under overfladen

\* hjælpe \* forhekse  
/ -trylle

\* imponerende \* fortryllelse \* gøre noget

\* ærefrygtindgydende trolddom, hekseri

\* fornemmelse af \* hjælpe \* hjælpeløshed

\* forfærdelig, frygtelig \* følelse af ...

\* skrækkelig

\* føle sig hjælpeløs overfor > \* misbrug

\* hjælpe \* hjælpeløst offer for ngt.

\* ingen \* gøre for / \* der er ikke noget  
noget ved det at gøre ved det

\* hjælpe \* hjælpe overfor at kunne

\* ~ her lades alt håb ude

\* alvorlig \* håbløs  
slem

\* der er ikke noget at gøre ved det \* =

\* underordning / -danighed, servilitet

\* manglende evne til at -

\* tiltrækning \* =

\* lokke ng. ind i ( at ) ngt. \* underordnet / -danig  
ydmyg, servil

\* tillokkende / dragende

\* byen ( sg.) \* << overfor

\* tillokke / \* fortryllende  
dragende magt ved ngt. betagende

\* underordnet, komme i anden række

\* tage ngt. med i sine overvejelser

\* << i forhold til ngt.

\*

\* argumentere ng. til at - \* føje ng.

\* alt i alt / alt sammen \* sejr for ng.

103 Then one day, a stranger <b>checks into a hotel.</b>	* tjekke ind / indskrive sig på >	* hotel
His <b>checking in</b> at the hotel is an event of happy <b>portent.</b>	* - - - på ( hotel etc. )	* ( godt ) varsel
His <b>appearance spells</b> the end of a <b>massive fraud.</b>	* opdukken * varsle ngt. * & kæmpe- * bedrag / -eri ankomst mæssigt fupnummer	
In order to <b>check in / sign in / register (up)on arrival,</b> `redšistê	* tjekke ind / indskrive sig	* ved ankomst
and <b>check out / sign out (up)on departure,</b>	* tjekke ud, udskrive sig	* ved afrejse
all guests must go to <b>reception (U) E/A the reception desk.</b>	* receptionen * receptions- * skranke modtagelsen	
The guests <b>fill in</b> eE/eA <b>fill out</b> a <b>form</b> that contains	* udfylde >	* formular
<b>questions on their full name, ( Christian / first name,</b>	* spørgsmål ( gående ) på > * fulde navn * fornavn	
<b>family name / last name / surname, and middle name ),</b>	* efternavn	* mellemnavn
<b>10 sex, place of residence, and date and place of birth.</b>	* fødseldato / -dag	* fødested
When a guest has <b>completed</b> the form,	* udfylde ngt. ( helt )	
the <b>receptionist / A&amp;: ( desk ) clerk signs ( ) in</b> the guest	* receptionist, portier	* inskrive ng.
by <b>registering</b> his arrival in the <b>hotel register</b>	* registrere / optegne ngt. * register, optegnelse	
He <b>signs ( ) out</b> the guests <b>at checkout / (up)on departure.</b>	* udskrive ng.	* ~ ved afrejse
The stranger has to <b>lend</b> the receptionist his <b>ballpoint pen.</b>	* låne ng. ngt.	* kuglepen
' The <b>pencils disappear</b> all the time - they <b>vanish</b> as soon	* blyant * forsvinde * = blive væk	
as I buy them,' the latter <b>complains, borrowing the ballpoint.</b>	* klage * låne ngt. * kuglepen beklage sig	
The stranger's name is <b>spelt / spelled wrong.</b>	* stave * forkert ( adv. efter verb. )	
The receptionist has <b>spelt / spelled</b> his name wrongly.	* =	
20 He has <b>misspelt / misspelled</b> it.	* =	
' How do you then <b>spell</b> your <b>surname</b> -	* =	* efternavn
could you <b>spell ( )</b> that name <b>out</b> again ? ' he asks.	* =	
The stranger <b>replies that</b> it is <b>spelled with</b> a double 's',	* svare at -	* ~ staves med ngt.
and <b>spelt with</b> a 'K' ; K-l-a-u-s-s-e-n <b>spells</b> klausen.	* - = -	* ~ siger ngt.
The stranger <b>signs</b> his <b>name</b> in the hotel <b>register.</b>	* underskrive sig med sit navn	* & protokol
When a guest has <b>signed</b> the register, the receptionist	* indskrive sig i ngt.	
usually <b>signs that</b> the <b>porter</b> picks up the <b>luggage</b> (eE) –	* give tegn til at - * hotelkarl * bagage	
but the <b>bellboy ( page (&lt;boy ) E/A bellhop)</b> has <b>disappeared.</b>	* piccolo	* forsvinde
<b>Hesitantly,</b> the stranger <b>turns to</b> the receptionist asking,	* tøvende	* henvende sig til ng.
30 ' Could you <b>give / lend</b> (me) <b>a ( helping ) hand ?</b> '	* give / række ( ng. ) en hjælpende hånd	
The receptionist doesn't appear to be very <b>helpful,</b> though.	* hjælpsom, tjenstvillig	
' I <b>can't help it if</b> the <b>baggage</b> (eA) is heavy, ' he answers,	* det er ikke éns skyld / * bagage én kan ikke gøre for at -	
<b>unwilling to offer</b> ( the stranger ) <b>a ( helping ) hand.</b>	* uvillig * tilbyde ( ng. ) en ( hjælpende ) hånd	
When the stranger <b>politely repeats</b> the question,	* høfligt	* gentage
the receptionist, called Bill, <b>unhelpfully replies</b>	* uhjælpsom, utjenstvillig	* svare med >
<b>with an ironic(&lt;al) smile</b> and an <b>air of superiority,</b>	* med > * ironisk * smil * mine * overlegenhed ~ overlegen mine	
' <b>God helps them that help themselves.</b> '	* Gud hjælper dem, der hjælper sig selv	
The stranger <b>cannot conceive what's going on.</b>	* ikke fatte hvxx -	* hvad, der sker

**104** Having **asked for help** and **assistance**,

and just **received** an **unhelpful response** and **answer**,

the stranger **remarks ironically** ' **You're a great help.** '

' Really, ' Bill **responds** in the same **tone ( of voice )**.

**Lifting** his luggage, and starting to **climb (up)** the **stairs**,

the stranger, however, **stumbles** and falls at the third **step**.

In pain the stranger **screams / shrieks** for **help**.

Unable to **manage** the **stairs**, he lies **helpless** on the floor

with a **helpless look**, making a **helpless gesture**.

**10** Even if the stranger **apparently** has **sprained** his **ankle**,

Bill, the receptionist, **merely looks on helplessly**.

I **can't help** you / your being so **clumsy**, ' Bill **hesitates**,

until the stranger **makes the sign of the cross**.

Bill suddenly feels **urged** to **sign** and be **helpful**.

**Giving / lending** the stranger a **helping hand**,

Bill he **assists / helps** the **mysterious** stranger **to** his **feet**.

**Noticing (that)** the stranger's **coat** is **awkward handling**,  
to **handle**, and that he has difficulty (in) **taking off** his **coat**,

Bill asks, ' **Do you need any help with that ?** '

**20** ' **Can I be of any help ? - can I be of any help to you ?** '

' Let me **help** you **off with** your coat, ' he **offers**,

and **sighs** ' Helpfulness is **in short supply** nowadays, **isn't it ?** '

' **You're quite right,** ' the stranger **assents**, **as it happens**.

**Being helped upstairs** by Bill, the stranger **staggers /**  
**totters up the stairs**, **hampered** by his bad ankle **sprain**.

' **Thank you for all your help**, ' the stranger concludes,

very **appreciative of** Bill's help.

If the receptionist really is helpful, that's a **good sign**.

If he's just pretending to be helpful, that's a **very bad sign**.

**30** ' I **hope I'm not interrupting** you, and I **hope** you **don't**  
**mind me asking**, but what's the matter with this town ? '

the stranger **inquires /E& enquires** later on **in reception**.

Having **inquired** the receptionist's name and **inquired into**  
the matter, the stranger **inquires** where to find a **bible**.

**It's ironic that** the stranger, being an atheist himself,  
believes that the sight of the bible would **help matters**.

If the receptionist is **cooperative /E& co-operative**,  
**it's a sure sign that** the enchantress' influence is **tottering**.

It's **about time** – it's **high time**.

\* bede om hjælp

\* assistance  
bistand

\* modtage > \* uhjælpssom \* response, reaktion \* svar  
tjenstvillig svar, -melding

\* være en stor hjælp \* ironisk

\* svare \* tonefald

\* løfte \* bestige / gå op ad > \* trappe  
hanke op i ngt.

\* snuble \* trin ( skridt / trappetrin )

\* råbe på hjælp

\* klare > \* trapperne \* ligge \* hjælpeløs  
& trappen

\* hjælpeløst \* blik \* hjælpeløs \* bevægelse

\* tilsyneladende \* forstrække \* ankel  
forstuve

\* blot se hjælpeløst til

\* gøre for ng. ⇔ at - \* klodset \* tøve

\* gøre korsets tegn

\* tilskynde \* gøre korsets tegn \* være hjælpsom /  
slå kors for sig behjælpelig, tjenstvillig

\* række / give ng. en hjælpende hånd

\* bistå / hjælpe ng. > \* mystisk \* på fode

\* bemærke at - \* frakke \* akavet / \* håndtere  
ubekvem at -

\* = \* tage frakken / sin frakke af

\* have brug for hjælp med

\* kunne være ( ng. ) til nogen hjælp  
/ hjælpe ( ng. ) med noget

\* hjælpe ng. af med ngt. \* tilbyde

\* sukke \* en mangelvare \* ikke sandt

\* ng. har helt ret \* samtykke \* ~ i den forbindelse  
bifalde

\* blive hjulpet \* ovenpå \* vakle

\* = \* op ad trapperne \* hæmmet \* forstrækning  
/ -stuvning

\* takke ng. for al deres hjælp

\* taknemmelig for ngt.

\* være et godt tegn

\* være et rigtigt dårligt tegn

\* jeg håber ikke ( at ) jeg \* bryde ind \* >  
forstyrre

\* jeg håber ikke, du / de har noget imod, at jeg spørger

\* forhøre sig \* i receptionen

\* ... om \* ... angående ngt.

\* forhøre sig om hvxx \* bibel

\* det er ironisk / skæbnens ironi at -  
( ~ pudsigt / morsomt selvmodsigende )

\* gavne / fremme sagen

\* samarbejdsvillig

\* være et sikkert tegn på at - \* vakle

\* på høje tid

<b>105 Without hesitation</b> , Bill, the receptionist, admits that	* uden tøven
a blonde has <b>pulled the wool over</b> most townspeople's <b>eyes</b>	* trække > * uld * over ngs. øjne ~ stikke ng. blår i øjnene, føre føre ng. bag lyset
<b>by means of</b> enchantment, and <b>taken</b> them <b>in</b>	* ved hjælp af ngt. * ~ tage ng ved næsen
<b>with the help of</b> her <b>devoted</b> followers, always <b>faithful to</b> her.	* ved hjælp af ng. * hengiven * trofast overfor ng.
<b>Owing to</b> her followers' devotion, their help and assistance,	* ved hjælp af ngt.
she <b>took / gained control</b> of the town.	* tage / få kontrol over ngt.
Bill has <b>obviously</b> turned into a <b>credible</b> witness.	* tydeligvis * troværdig
It's just not <b>credible that</b> he should <b>distort / twist</b> the <b>truth</b> .	* troligt at - * fordreje / forvanske > * sandheden
The stranger finds the story <b>bizarre</b> , not to say	* bizar sælsom
<b>10 unbelievable</b> ; it is <b>hardly believable</b> .	* utrolig * næppe til at tro på
Bill <b>helpfully suggests</b> ( that ) they try the <b>library</b> .	* hjælpsomt * foreslå at * bibliotek `laibrèri / E& `libri
' <b>Let me help</b> you <b>on with</b> your coat –	* hjælpe ng. ngt. på
<b>let me help</b> you <b>into</b> your coat, ' he <b>offers</b> .	* hjælpe ng. i ngt. * tilbyde
They reach the library <b>with the help of</b> a <b>wheel chair</b> as	* ved hjælp af ngt. * rullestol
the stranger could walk only <b>with the assistance of crutches</b> .	* ved hjælp af ngt. * krykke
The <b>helpful</b> information <b>is (of)</b> <b>much help</b> .	* nyttig * til stor hjælp
The <b>helpful</b> advice and suggestion are a <b>big help</b> .	* = * en stor hjælp
Not until Bill, however, <b>repeats</b> the sign of the cross,	* gentage ngt.
the <b>unwilling librarian unwillingly</b> asks, ' <b>Can I help</b> you? '	* bibliotekar * kunne hjælpe ng.
<b>20</b> When Bill then asks for a bible, the now <b>willing</b> librarian	* villig
answers <b>willingly</b> and <b>helpfully</b> , ' I'm afraid ( that ) they	* villigt * hjælpsomt * brænde ngt. tjenstvilligt
have all been <b>burnt</b> – sorry I can't be more <b>helpful</b> !	* behjælpelig
Bill, however, <b>can't help</b> thinking ( that )	* kunne lade være med / undgå at -
the librarian knows more than that.	*
If the librarian is cooperative, it's a <b>sure sign that</b>	* være et sikkert tegn på at-
the stranger is about to <b>break the spell</b> .	* bryde / ophæve > * fortryllelse, trolddom
So when the stranger <b>asks</b> the librarian <b>to</b> help them,	* bede / spørge ng. om at -
he <b>reiterates</b> the sign of the cross.	* gentage ngt. ( flere gange )
<b>As it happens</b> , the librarian now <b>remembers</b> some bibles.	* ~ som tilfældet er * huske / komme i tanke om ngt.
<b>30</b> It <b>strikes</b> her <b>that</b> some bibles were once <b>discarded</b> .	* det slår én / * kassere / ~ ng.. komme i tanke om at - skille sig af med ngt.
It <b>occurs to</b> her <b>that</b> a number of <b>discarded</b> bibles	* det gå op for én /
were <b>set apart</b> in the <b>stacks</b> (pl.)	* ng. komme i tanke om at - sætte til side * bogmagasin
The librarian <b>is much help</b> when she <b>comes to think of</b>	* til stor hjælp * komme i tanke om
a <b>box of</b> bibles and she <b>indicates</b> her helpfulness.	* kasse med ngt. * påpege ngt.
She <b>is of much help</b> when she <b>thinks of</b> the bibles.	* til stor hjælp * komme i tanke om ngt.
' <b>Come and help</b> me lift the box, ' she <b>entreats</b> .	* komme og hjælpe ng. med at - * bede bønfalde
As Bill <b>helps</b> ( <b>to</b> ) carry the box, and <b>helps</b> the others ( <b>in</b> )	* hjælpe ( til ) med at - * hjælpe ng. med at -
<b>distributing</b> the bibles, they <b>make a concerted effort to</b>	* uddele ngt. * gøre en fælles indsats / dis`tribju`ting / `dis- kraftanstrengelse for at -
<b>share</b> the bibles ( <b>out</b> ) &/ ( <b>among / between</b> the townsfolk ).	* dele ngt. ( ud ) / fordele ngt. ( blandt ng. )

**106** That very evening, **like a sign** from **heaven**,  
an old **electric sign** showing a cross suddenly starts to  
**give out light** as the stranger **indicates** the sign and shouts,  
' **It's a sign that God helps in** breaking the spell.'

' **Believe you me**, she's a deceiver ! ' the stranger shouts.

' **Believe me !** ' the **`resolute** stranger **reiterates**,  
and goes on, ' **Don't believe a word of what** she says. '

' **God help us** if this doesn't work - **heaven help us**  
if this doesn't work. ' some people **pray**.

**10** **Resolute** in his **belief** that **there is** still a **glimmer / a ray**  
**of hope**, the stranger says, ' I'll do what I can,  
but **don't get your hopes up** as the situation  
is **fraught with** difficulty, problems, and danger. '

There are, however, **sure signs that** a **fraud**  
and **`demagogue** of **portentous** power **is on the retreat**.

The stranger's firm **disbelief of** superstition together with  
his **belief in** himself **shake** the townspeople's **belief in**  
the enchantress and their **belief in** her promises.

He **discloses / reveals** the **credibility gap between** what  
**20** the **demagogic** fraud promised, and what she has done.

There is a **lot credible** in what the stranger says.

It's beginning to work but none of it would have been  
possible **without** the stranger's **help**.

New activities **argue** an **incipient awakening**.

While the townspeople were **acting in the belief that**  
the **horrible** enchantress were doing good, they **were** actually  
**under the delusion that** she ever **intended so**.

There was, in fact, **nothing `credible in** what she did.

The case **has** all **appearances of (a) fraud**.

**30** The stranger **reiterates that** even if you believe in  
something or somebody, you've **got to believe in yourself**.

All the townsfolk who see that the stranger acts **creditably**  
give the stranger the **thumb-up sign** and the **V-sign**.

It's a very **credible** result for the stranger

He is **helped around** in the town by **restored** townsfolk,  
and **assisted about** by the restored townspeople.

**Omens for** the future are good as the townsfolk

**go to bat for** (A) the stranger, and all **pass on a reiteration**  
of the stranger's statements **to** the rest of the town dwellers.

\* selvsamme \* som et tegn ( fra ) \* himmelen

\* ~ lysreklame

\* udsende lys \* henvise til / pege på ngt.

\* det er tegn på at- \* hjælpe til at -

\* tro mig

\* = \* beslutsom \* gentage ( mundtligt ) flere gange

\* tro ikke tro på et ( eneste ) ord af ngt.

\* gud være os nådig \* himmelen ...

\* bede

\* fast i > \* troen på at - \* ... et glimt / svagt håb

\* =

\* sætte forventningerne i vejret

\* ~ ( bedragerisk ) ladet med ( besvær etc. )

\* sikre \* tegn ( på ) at - \* bedrager / svindler, der  
foregiver at kunne noget

\* demagog \* frygtindgydende \* på tilbagetog  
folkeforfører ildevarslende, uheldsvanger

\* vantro

tvivl

\* tro på ( sig selv ) \* ryste \* =

\* =

\* afsløre / \* = \* troværdighedskløft  
åbenbare ngt.

\* folkeforførende - `gå -

\* en masse troværdigt

\*

\* uden ngs. hjælp

\* ~ tyde på > \* begyndende, gryende \* opvågner

\* handle i den tro at -

\* forfærdelig, frygtelig \* være ( svæve ) >

\* skrækkelig \* have sådan i sinde

\* i den vildfarelse at -

\* intet > \* anerkendelsesværdigt /  
hæderligt i ngt.

\* have > \* ~ alt hvad der ligner > \* bedrageri  
fupnummer

\* gentage at -

\* skulle tro på sig selv

\* anerkendelsesværdigt, hæderligt

\* tommelfingeren-op-tegn \* v-tegn ( victory- )

\* ærefuld

\* anerkendelsesværdigt

\* hjælpe afsted \* restituere  
komme sig

\* =

\* ~ udsigterne for ngt.

\* ~ give sig til at hjælpe / \* viderebringe \* gentagelse  
støtte ng. / -give ngt.

\* til ng.

107 As the stranger <b>seizes</b> the <b>initiative with both hands</b> ,	* gribe initiativet ...	
and does his best to <b>undermine</b> enchantress' <b>credibility</b>	* underminere	* troværdighed
and <b>demagoguery</b> , she little by little <b>loses credibility</b> .	* demagogi folkeforførelse	* miste ...
Gradually the townspeople <b>lose faith in</b> the enchantress.	* miste tiltroen til	
There are <b>signs of</b> her <b>declining</b> and <b>waning</b> credibility.	* synlige tegn på ng.	* aftage dale, falde
There are <b>obvious signs that</b> her credibility is <b>in decline</b> ,	* ... på at -	* i aftagende for nedadgående
and that her popularity is <b>on the wane</b> .	* ~ i aftagen, & dalende, faldende	
The stranger <b>makes</b> the townspeople <b>fully appreciate that</b> /	* få ng. til at >	* fuldtud    * opdage / indse at -
<b>realize</b> ( that ) their <b>faith in</b> the <b>self-possessed</b> enchantress,	* =	* tro på ng.    * velafbalanceret
10 and that their <b>faith in</b> her promises are a <b>mistaken belief</b> .	* =	* fejlagtig    * tro
		mi`stakên
Fully <b>appreciated</b> , the stranger is now <b>the hope of</b> the town.	* værdsat	* ngs. håb
<b>In a close encounter with</b> the stranger, the enchantress	* i >	* tæt / ~ farefuldt møde med ng.
uses all her charm to <b>dazzle</b> him with her <b>enticing</b> beauty.	* forblænde ng.	* fristende tillokkende
<b>Even so / Despise that</b> , he remains <b>unaffected</b> .	* på trods af det	* upåvirket
<b>In spite of the fact that</b> she used to be able to	* ... af ( det faktum ) at -	
<b>entice</b> everybody by her charm, he <b>refuses to</b> be <b>enticed</b> .	* friste / lokke ng.    * nægte at -    * lade sig ...	
<b>Despite the fact that</b> she is <b>enticingly</b> beautiful, he is	* på trods af ( det faktum ) at -	* fristende
<b>determined not to</b> be <b>persuaded and</b> / <b>to</b> change his mind.	* fast besluttet på at -    * lade sig overtale og / til at -	
<b>In spite of</b> her <b>enticement</b> he is <b>adamant</b> .	* lokken fristen	* stenhård urokkelig
20 <b>Despite</b> her <b>enticements</b> , he <b>remains adamant</b> .	* på trods af ng.	* lokkeri fristelse
He is <b>peculiarly adamant on</b> this point.	* usædvanlig ...	* på det punkt
Having <b>seized</b> the <b>iniative from</b> her, he speaks in	* tage iniativet fra ng.	
a <b>masterful</b> tone of voice without <b>unnecessary hesitation</b> .	* myndig    * unødvendig    * tøven	
		- `ne -
<b>Adamant in</b> his <b>resolution</b> , not to <b>yield to</b> her enticement,	* urokkelig i >    * beslutsomhed    * bøje sig / give efter /	vige for ng.
he is <b>adamant that</b> he will not yield to any <b>enticing</b> offer.	* være fast besluttet på at -	* lokkeri fristelse
The enchantress fails to <b>appear calm in spite of herself</b> .	* virke    * rolig    * imod sin vilje	
She <b>loses</b> her <b>self-possession despite herself</b> .	* miste selvbeherskelsen	* =
He notices (a certain) <b>hesitancy / hesitance in</b> her <b>voice</b> .	* tøven i stemmen	
<b>Adamantly opposed to</b> her, and knowing that alternative	* urokkelig i sin modstand mod	
30 <b>therapy</b> has <b>gained credence</b> , he <b>pretends</b> ( that ) he is	* terapi    * vinde troværdighed    * foregive ( at - )	
an <b>exorcist</b> : an <b>expert at / in / on</b> ( practicing ) <b>exorcism</b> ( U )	* djævleuddriver    * ekspert i ( at ) ng.	* ... -uddrivelse
who has the most <b>cunning exorcisms to</b> his <b>credit</b> .	* dygtig    * =    * der tjener til ens ære	
	snu, snedig	
He <b>take steps to exorcize</b> the evil spirit; <b>exorcize it from</b>	* tage skridt til at -    * uddrive ng.	* ... ng. fra ng.
her body and <b>exorcize it from</b> the town <b>by all means</b> .	* =	* med alle midler
It's <b>apparently</b> a <b>cunning</b> piece of <b>rapid</b> exorcism.	* tilsyneladende    * durkdreven, snedig    * hurtig	udspekuleret
' You know what I mean,' he <b>hints</b> , but not <b>deigning to</b> wait	* antyde	* nedlade sig til at -
for an answer, he <b>emphasizes</b> , ' Do I have to <b>spell it</b> ' <b>out</b> ? '	* pointere    * stave / forklare det	skære det ud i pap
	understrege	
So he <b>resolutely spells</b> ( ) <b>out</b> his intentions.	* resolut, beslutsomt    * ... ng.	
	fast besluttet	
' Go on ! <b>Try my</b> ! I <b>dare</b> you ! ' he concludes.	* afprøve / teste ng.	* opfordre ng. ~ hvis du tør





<b>109</b> The police <b>investigate</b> the enchantress' <b>disappearance</b> .	* undersøge / efterforske ngt.	* forsvinden
Having <b>fled from</b> the town <b>with a rush</b> , she <b>is no doubt //</b>	* flygte fra ngt. * i en ruf * være > * utvivlsomt over hals og hoved	
<b>without / beyond doubt ( over the hills and ) far away.</b>	* uden tvivl * langt borte, over alle bjerge	
The whole <b>deception</b> is eventually <b>disclosed</b> and <b>revealed</b> .	* bedrag / -eri * afsløre ngt. * =	
It has <b>become apparent that</b> she's a deceiver;	* blive tydeligt at -	
it has <b>become obvious that</b> she's a deceitful impostor.	* =	
As the most <b>wanted</b> person, she's <b>wanted by</b> the police	* ~ eftersøgt * ... af	
<b>on a charge of deceit.</b>	* sigtet for ngt. * bedrag / -eri	
<b>It's apparent / obvious to</b> the townsfolk <b>that</b> they have	* ... åbenbart / * bedrager tydeligt for ng.	
<b>10</b> been the victims of a <b>cheat</b> eE/eA <b>cheater</b> .	* snyder	
Being an <b>inveterate liar</b> and a <b>cunning fraud</b> ,	* forhærdet * løgner * snu, durkdreven * bedrager udspekuleret fupmager	
she <b>used low cunning to get away with</b> her <b>fraud(s)</b> .	* bruge gemen snedighed * slippe * bedrag / -eri / udspekulerethed afsted med > ( ...-erier )	
<b>As cunning as a fox</b> , the enchantress had <b>deceptively</b>	* snu som en ræv * bedragerisk	
and <b>fraudulently</b> presented an <b>inviting credo</b> .	* bedragerisk * tiltalende * trosgrundlag	
<b>It is hoped that</b> the money <b>obtained by fraud</b> can be found	* man håber at- * opnå ngt. ved > * bedrag / -eri	
and she can be caught and <b>get / receive</b> her ( <b>just</b> ) <b>deserts</b> .	* få > * sin ( retfærdige / velfortjente ) straf	
There are, though, <b>neither signs of</b> her anywhere	* hverken * tegn på / spor af ng.	
<b>nor</b> signs of the money obtained by her <b>fraudulent</b> activities.	* eller * bedragerisk	
As <b>there are no sign of</b> the <b>fraudster's</b> (E) <b>`whereabouts</b> ,	* = * bedrager svindler * opholdssted	
<b>20</b> <b>hopes for</b> the missing money <b>are fading</b> .	* håb for ngt. svinder	
It's a situation <b>fraught with</b> problems, and the townsfolk	* ladet med / sprængfyldt med ngt.	
have yet <b>only scratched</b> the <b>surface of</b> the <b>problem</b> .	* kun se problemets overflade ( * kradse i ... )	
When the <b>full extent of</b> the enchantress' <b>fraudulence</b> (U)	* fulde udstrækning * svigagtighed bedrageri	
<b>dawns on</b> the townspeople, <b>it dawns on</b> them <b>that</b> they have	* gå op for ng. * ... ng. at -	
been <b>thoroughly</b> cheated and <b>defrauded of</b> all their money.	* grundigt * bedrage ng. for ngt.	
People feel very <b>abashed</b> .	* forlegen, flov, skamfuld	
If you are <b>blinded</b> ( <b>to</b> reality ) by <b>fraudulent</b> enchantment,	* blindet ~ forblændet ( * overfor ngt. ) * bedragerisk svigagtig	
it's hard to <b>keep</b> your <b>composure / cool</b> , and <b>stay out of debt</b> .	* ~ bevare fatningen * holde sig fri af > * gæld	
<b>It spells</b> a time <b>fraught with</b> difficulties and frustration.	* varsle ngt. * ladet / sprængfyldt med ngt.	
<b>30</b> Many <b>defrauded</b> townspeople had <b>gone overdrawn</b> , and	* bedragen * få overtræk	
some accounts are <b>overdrawn by</b> several hundred pounds.	* være overtrukket med ngt.	
Having <b>run up / amassed debts</b> of <b>hundreds of</b> pounds,	* oparbejdet > * gæld på ngt. * hundrede af ngt.	
many townspeople have <b>for the first time got / run into debt</b> .	* for første gang * ~ komme i gæld	
<b>Heavily / deeply in debt</b> , having <b>debts</b> of several <b>hundred</b> ,	* i dyb gæld * have gæld på ngt. * hundrede	
all towns people are <b>saddled with debt</b> .	* bebyrdet af ngt.	
Being hundred of pounds <b>in debt</b> they have a <b>debt burden</b> .	* x i gæld * gældsbyrde	
Unable to pay <b>overdue bills</b> and <b>meet overdue payments</b>	* forfalden * regning * indfri > * = * betaling	
and having <b>fallen / sunk into debt</b> , they need to <b>pay</b> ( <b>off</b> ) /	* synke ned i > * gæld * ( tilbage- ) betale >	
<b>repay / clear / settle</b> their <b>outstanding debt(s)</b> to feel happy.	* = * udeståede * gæld ikke betalt gældspost	

# 110 Hoping to find a way out of the crisis situation,

the townsfolk **hope** ( that ) the situation will soon improve.

As they believe **there is no hope**, a handful of **pessimists**

**in particular find** their situation **hard to** accept.

Having a **pessimistic view** of **life**, and being **pessimistic**

( **about** the future ), they **find it hard to** accept their situation.

**Among** them, there's **deep pessimism** (U) **over** the future.

**In a mood** of **pessimism about** the future,

they feel that their lives are ( **in** ) a **hopeless mess**.

**10** They feel certain that **there is no hope of recovery**;

**no hope that** the enchantress will ever be **caught / captured**,

**no hope of recovering** the **missing** property,

**no hope for** the **deceived** townspeople, and **no hope for**

the future in the **wake** of their **expensive** and **costly mistakes**.

So the pessimists virtually **hold out no hope**.

**Nervous about / of** the future, **not holding out any hope**,

they **fear** ( that ) the situation **is** very near **beyond hope**.

**Whining about** a situation **beyond hope of** improvement,

the pessimists fear it's **beyond hope of** getting better.

**20** They virtually **hold out no hope of recovering**.

**Not holding out any hope of recovering** the lost money

**from** the enchantress and **from** the cheat, the pessimists

do **not hold out much hope of recovering from** the deceit.

They **hold out little hope of recovering** their **optimism**,

and of **recovering from** the depression.

So the pessimists **don't hold out much hope of recovery**.

**Holding out no hope of the recovery of** the missing money,

they **hold out little hope of recovery from** the cheat.

As the pessimists **don't hold out much hope for** the town,

**30** they **pessimistically hold out little hope for** the future

As ' **hope putteth not to shame** ' there is **cautious**

**optimism about** the future among most townspeople.

The **realists** and **moderate optimists look forward**

**with optimism (that)** the situation is not **past hope**.

**Taking** a more **optimistic view** ( of the future ),

the optimists believe there is still a **faint hope**:

that there's a **faint hope of recovering from financial ruin**.

They **cannot conceive** ( **that** ) the **situation**

would **get altogether more serious**.

\* håbe at - \* ... vej ud af \* krisessituation

\* =

\* der ikke er noget håb \* håndfuld \* pessimist

\* især \* finde ( situationen ) svær at - sortseer

\* pessimistisk \* livssyn \* ...

\* med hensyn til ngt. \* finde det svært at -

\* dyb pessimisme mht.

\* =

\* håbløst ( \* i ) \* rod / -eri

\* ikke være noget håb om > \* bedring, helbredelse generhvervelse

\* ... håb om at - \* fanget taget til fange

\* = \* generhverve / \* forsvundet få ngt. tilbage savnet

\* ... håb for ng. \* bedragen \* ... ngt.

\* kølvandet \* dyr \* & fig. omkostnings- \* fejltagelse krævende

\* ikke have noget håb

\* nervøs omkring / \* ... noget som helst ... for ( fremtiden )

\* frygte at - \* ( være ) hinsides håb

\* jamre / klage over ngt. \* ... om ngt.

\* ... om at -

\* stille ngt. i udsigt \* intet håb ( om at ) \* komme sig

\* ... noget som helst ... \* generhverve / få ngt. igen

\* ... fra ng. / ngt.

\* ... meget ... \* komme sig af / over

\* kun stille lidt ... \* generhverve / \* optimisme få ngt. igen

\* komme sig over ngt.

\* ikke have meget håb om ngt. \* kommen sig

\* ... noget ... \* generhvervelse af ngt.

\* kun have lidt håb om \* komme sig over ngt.

\* ikke have meget håb for ng.

\* på pessimistisk vis \* kun have lidt håb for

\* håbet beskæmmer ingen \* forsigtig

\* optimisme mht.

\* realist \* moderat \* optimist \* se fremad

\* med optimisme om at - \* hinsides håb

\* anlægge et ( mere ) > \* opimistisk syn ( på ngt. )

\* spinkelt / svagt håb

\* ... om at - \* komme sig fra \* økonomisk ruin

\* ikke ( få sig selv til at ) tro at - \* situation

\* blive > \* alt i alt \* mere > \* alvorlig

111 There is a **glimmer** / a **ray of hope** of recovery,  
as the optimists themselves are a **glimmer** / a **ray of hope**.

As there are always **grounds for cautious optimism**,  
they **optimistically** say that he town is not **without hope**.

In an **optimistic mood**, the optimists always find things  
that **give cause** / **reason** for **optimism**.

**Living in hope**, they **live in hopes of** a better future.

In a **mood of optimism** for the future,  
they **are in hopes that** things will improve.

10 **Optimistic about** the future, they **live in the hope that**  
there's **light at the end of the` tunnel**.

**Cautiously optimistic that** improvement will take place,  
they **have confident hopes that** things will become better.

In the **hope that** things will get better, most townsfolk  
**put their trust in** the future without being **over-optimistic**.

**While there is life there is hope**.

**Hope springs eternal in the human breast**.

Seeing the **light at the end of the tunnel**, the stranger  
is a **beacon** / **symbol of hope** for the townspeople.

20 'Let's **hope** we can **stand / stick together**,' he says,  
'and be **careful** ( **that** ) we don't **get / build** ( ) **up our hopes** –  
if we **raise** your **hopes too much**, we may be **disappointed**.'

Deeply **indebted** ( **to** the stranger ) ( **for** his help ),  
in`detid  
the townspeople **owe** a **debt of gratitude** ( **to** him )  
det

In the stranger's **debt**, they **acknowledge** their **debt to** him.

Some of the **deceived** townsfolk claim that the enchantress  
**cheated death** by her **prompt** disappearance.

Although the townspeople **believe** many of their **assets to**  
have disappeared, they don't organize a **witch hunt**.

30 As they **believe** their accounts **to** have been **drained**,  
they **believe** their bank accounts drained and **empty**.

All their money has disappeared, **believed transferred**.  
- `fê~d  
'Will we get any money back ? ' people **wail** and **whine**.

Although they certainly **hope so** they **believe not**.

In fact they do **not have a hope: not a hope in hell**.

As there is **no obvious solution to** the problem,  
they **don't have a hope** ( **in hell** ) **of** getting their money back.

**Anxious** / **exercised about** the situation,  
having **no amount of** hope, people **struggle against** despair.

\* antydning / glimt af > \* håb om ngt.

\* påmindelse om > \* håb  
( flakkende skær / stråle )

\* grunde til > \* forsigtig \* optimisme

\* optimistisk \* uden håb

\* i optimistisk \* humør

\* give grund til > \* optimisme

\* leve i håb \* leve i håb om ngt.

\* i et optimistisk humør med hensyn til ngt.

\* være i forhåbninger / forventninger om

\* optimistisk mht. \* leve i det håb at -

\* lys for enden af tunnelen

\* forsigtig \* optimistisk mht. at -

\* have > \* fortrøstningsfuld \* håb om at -

\* i det håb at -

\* sætte sin lid til ngt. \* overoptimistisk

\* hvor der er liv er der håb

\* håbet er lysegrønt ( \* udspringe \* evigt \* bryst )  
opstå

\* lyset ...

\* ledestjerne ( \* bavn, fyr, sømærke / symbol på ... )

\* lad os håbe at -

\* omhyggelig med at - \* optrappe ngs. forhåbninger  
skruer ngs. forventninger i vejret

\* ... for meget \* skuffe ngt.

\* ( dybt ) kommet i gæld til ng. for ngt.

\* stå i taknemmelighedsgæld ( til ng.)

\* ( ~ stå ) i \* anerkende / erkende / \* gæld til ng.  
gæld til ng. vedkende sig ngt.

\* bedragen

\* snyde døden \* prompte  
( med nød og næppe undslippe døden ) omgående

\* anse ngt. for at - \* værdier

\* tro / være overbevist om at ngt.

\* heksejagt

\* << \* dræne / tømme ngt.

\* anse ngt. for + adj. \* tom

\* antaget ngt. for + pap. \* overført

\* jamre \* jamre  
klage klynke

\* håbe det \* tro det ikke / næppe

\* ikke have et håb \* ... det fjerneste håb

\* ingen indlysende løsning på ...

\* ... om at -

\* bekymret over ngt.

\* ingen som helst \* kæmpe mod ( desperation )

112 Things are as <b>fraught</b> as ever in the town.	* anspændt / anstrengt / belastet
In dire straits, the heavily <b>indebted</b> town may <b>go bankrupt</b> .	* i alvorlig * knibe * ( stærkt ) forgældet * gå bankerot in`deted ( stræde i havet ) / fallit
In dire need of help, the town dwellers <b>hope not</b> as they	* have alvorlig behov for ngt. * ikke håbe det
have already <b>mortgaged</b> all their <b>tangible assets</b> / <b>property</b> .	* belåne ngt. * handgribelig * værdier / ejendele `mã~gid\$ð
As long poverty is a <b>dire threat</b> , they <b>hope to God</b> ( that )	* alvorlig * trussel * håbe ved gud at -
they may just have to live in <b>dire poverty</b> for some time.	* alvorlig * fattigdom
The deceiver's foreign accounts <b>are believed to</b>	* antages at -
have <b>swelled</b> / <b>swollen</b> by <b>credit transfer</b> .	* vokse / svulme * kredit overførsel - `fêr
The <b>shrewd mechanics</b> of <b>transference</b> of money are	* den > * udspekulerede * ~ teknik / * overførsel A: -`fe- metode ( til > ) ( af penge )
10 believed to have <b>swelled</b> / <b>swollen</b> her foreign accounts.	* få ngt. til at vokse / svulme
Has she <b>settled</b> in a <b>safe</b> place and <b>settled</b> ( down ),	* slå sig ned + adv. * sikker * slå sig / falde til ro
<b>whitewashed</b> her <b>reputation</b> and <b>laundered</b> the money	* hvidvaske * omdømme * hvidvaske ( penge ) ry
<b>cheated out of</b> the <b>credulous</b> townfolks ?	* narre ngt. fra / ud af ng. * godtroende
They <b>believe so</b> and admit she has <b>batted a thousand</b> (A).	* tro det er sådan * have succes klare sig rigtigt godt
It <b>will appear that</b> this is a major problem.	* det skal vise sig at -
It <b>appears likely</b> (that) the enchantress will <b>evade capture</b> .	* forekomme / * undslippe > * tilfangetagelse synes sandsynligt at -
It seems <b>unlikely</b> ( that ) she will ever be caught	* ... usandsynligt at -
and the <b>naive</b> townspeople have their money back.	* naivitet, godtroenhed naï`i~v troskyldighed
The townspeople <b>don't believe</b> their <b>naivety</b> :	* have svært ved at tro ngt. * -hed
20 they <b>can't believe</b> their <b>credulity</b> .	* = * godtroenhed
Their credulity <b>brings discredit on</b> the town.	* bringe ng. i vanry - `kre - kaste skam over ng.
The townspeople don't <b>hesitate to draw conclusions</b> ,	* tøve med at - * drage konklusioner
and don't <b>hesitate over</b> what to be done.	* ... overfor ngt.
They ought to be more sceptic and <b>hesitant</b> :	* tøvende
more <b>hesitant about</b> believing in strangers,	* ... med at -
and more <b>hesitant to believe in glittering promises</b> .	* = * gyldne løfter
To their <b>discredit</b> , <b>devoted</b> followers of a religious creed,	* til > * ( ngs.) vanære * begejstret, hengiven skam, skændsel opofrende
often <b>hesitate to speak out</b> ( against atrocity / <ies ).	* udtale sig / tale åbent * imod > * ugerning, overgreb ~ tage bladet fra munden grusomhed
To the townspeople's <b>credit</b> , no one cares to	* til ngs. ære
30 keep up appearances to save appearances	* bevare skinnet * redde skinnet holde facaden
for the sake of appearances.	* for et syns skyld
While the whole blunder <b>exercises</b> their <b>minds</b> ,	* ~ holde ngs. sind travlt beskæftiget
the townspeople <b>wonder when</b> happiness will <b>appear</b> again.	* spekulere over hvornår - * opstå, vise sig
Still, there is a lot <b>credible</b> in what the stranger has done.	* ærefuld
It may be <b>stating the obvious</b> , but he has acted <b>creditably</b> .	* ( komme med ) en banal sandhed * ...-t
<b>Making no pretence to</b> having <b>preternatural faculties</b> ,	* ( ikke ) gøre fordring på at - * overnaturlig * evne
the stranger admits his exorcism was just <b>make-believe</b>	* indbildning, leg noget man leger
but the enchantress fortunately <b>promptly</b> believed in it.	* straks
It doesn't <b>matter</b> ( to the townspeople ) <b>that</b> he's been lying.	* betyde noget ( for ng. ) at -

113 The enchantress has **preyed on** all of the town.

Would people **credit it**? (E)

Would people really **credit what** had happened?

Would they **credit that** they have been easily **cheated**?

**credit how** they have been **cheated of** their money?

Some of them won't **credit it**, but they'd better **credit it**  
and **adapt / adjust – adapt / adjust ( themselves ) to**  
the **harsh realities** as they **explain** their **predicaments**.

It's an **obvious** comment and an obvious statement

10 but what the townsfolk have done is **beyond belief**.

**Conditions** ( in the town ) are **incredible / unbelievable**.

The dwellers have gone through an incredible amount  
of **deceits**, and an **unbelievable** amount of humiliations.

The enchantress' frauds **beggar description**.

**It beggars belief** how things could have gone this bad.

**Unbelievably** it actually worked.

Some townspeople believe she was **the evil incarnate**.  
in`ka~nêt

Those who believe in **Satan** believe she was

a **devil incarnate** or even the **Devil incarnate**.

20 Only **psychopats believe in** cheating people.

As the townspeople didn't **believe** cheating **of** such

**enthusiastic idealist**, they **believed in** the enchantress.  
in`#ju~zi`astik ai`di~êlist

The **idealistic enthusiast**, however, seems to  
aidiê`listik in`#ju~ziast

**have vanished**, her companion in crime **left helpless behind**.

**Seized** by the police and **submitting to questioning**, the  
accomplice **submits himself to a body search** by the police.

If he would **assist** police **with** their **inquiries** /eE enquiries,  
in`kwaiêriz  
it would really **help matters**.

Yet, behaving **unpredictably** and **weirdly**, he can't **help**  
-`dik-

30 them **with** their enquiries; he **appears to be under a spell**.

Suffering from **dizzy spells**, the accomplice is **examined**  
by a doctor who **can't account for / explain** this case, though.

As the police are **unable to understand** this **unpredictable**  
weirdo, they **send for a psychiatrist promptly**.  
sai`kaiêtrist

Having tried to **figure** ( ) **out** the patient and his symptoms,  
the psychiatrist, however, **holds`out no hope of** recovery.

He **gives** the **patient no hope**.

' You can't expect me to just **wave a ( magic )`wand**,  
and find a **cure for** this case,' he says regretably / regretfully.

\* drive rovdrift på / snylte på / udbytte ng.

\* tro ( på ) ( norm. ? og neg. )

\* =

\* =

\* =

\* franarret ng.

\* tro på det

\* tilpasse sig

\* ... sig til ng.

\* barsk \* realiteter \* forklare om > \* vanskelighed  
virkelighed

\* indlysende og overflødig

\* mere end utroligt

\* betingelserne ( i ng. )

\* utrolig ( forfærdelig )

\*

\* bedrag

\* overgår enhver beskrivelse ( gøre til tigger / fattig )

\* & det er fuldstændig utroligt

\* utroligt

\* den skindbarlige ondskab

\* Satan

\* en legemliggjort djævel i

\* den skinbarlige Djævel

\* psykopat

\* ~ gå ind for ng.

\* tiltro ng. ng.

forvente ng. af ng.

\* entusiastisk \* idealist

\* have tiltro til ng.

begejstret

\* idealistisk

\* entusiast

\* være forsvundet

\* være forsvundet

\* hjælpeløs forladt

\* på- / gribe ng.

\* underkaste sig ng.

\* udspørgen

\* lade sig underkaste ng.

\* kropsvisitering

\* bistå ... med ng.

\* undersøgelse  
efterforskning

\* fremme / gavne sagen

\* utilregneligt

\* underligt

\* hjælpe ng. >

\* med ng. \* synes at være >

\* underkastet trolddom  
~ forhekset / -tryllet

\* svimle perioder  
svimmelhedsanfald

\* undersøge ng.

\* redegøre for / forklare ng.

& stå uforstående overfor ng.

& stå uforstående overfor

\* utilregnelig

\* sende bud efter ng.

\* psykiater

\* straks  
uden tøven

\* ~ blive klog på ng&t.

\* stille ng. i udsigt

\* håb om ng.

\* ikke give >

\* patient

\* noget håb

\* svinge ( med ) ng.

\* ( trylle-) stav

\* kur for ng.

114 As the psychiatrist <b>is at a complete loss about</b> what to do,	* være >	* i et (komplet) tab omkring ng.
the police decide to <b>call</b> ( ) <b>in</b> / <b>call</b> the stranger.	* tilkalde / ringe til ng.	~ (helt) fortabt / uforstående overfor ng.
The <b>shrewd</b> stranger <b>promptly</b> recognizes the <b>symptoms</b>	* dreven, kløgtig	* straks
as <b>symptoms of</b> loss of <b>identity</b> having <b>to do with hypnosis</b> .	* skarpsindig	* symptom
The <b>tell-tale signs of</b> crisis <b>are to do with identity</b> crisis.	* ... på ng.	* & personlighed- (have) at gøre med overensstemmelse
'There is <b>hope of</b> a <b>cure</b> ,' the stranger says	* afslørende tegn på ng.	* identitets-
as he starts to <b>dehypnotize</b> the accomplice,	* håb om ng.	* kur
first <b>in a enticing tone</b> , then in a <b>commanding</b> tone.	* afhypnotisere ng.	
The <b>signal for waking</b> (him) <b>up</b> is to be a <b>pat on the back</b> ,	* i >	* lokkende
10 and a <b>pat on the shoulder</b> followed by a <b>loud clap</b> (sg.).	* tome	* kommanderende
So <b>giving</b> the accomplice <b>dehypnotizing treatment</b> ,	* signal / tegn til at -	* vågne (vække ng.)
the stranger <b>claps</b> / <b>pats</b> the accomplice first <b>on the back</b>	* ... skulderen	* højt
then <b>on the shoulder</b> before he <b>claps</b> his <b>hands</b>	* give ng. >	* klap / klappen
as a <b>signal</b> (for the accomplice) <b>to</b> wake up,	* klappe ng. >	* behandling
and <b>dismiss</b> the spell <b>from</b> his <b>mind</b> .	* på skulderen	* på ryggen
The stranger's treatment of the accomplice <b>gives hope to</b>	* signal / tegn (til ng.) om at -	
the authorities involved, and <b>offers hope to</b> the accomplice.	* fordrive ng. >	* fra sit sind
As the accomplice <b>comes (a)`round</b> / <b>comes to him`self</b> ,	* behandling af ng.	* give håb til ng.
the <b>bystanders clap</b> (the stranger / performance) (in relief).	* =	
20 <b>Giving him a clap</b> , they <b>greet</b> the stranger <b>with clapping</b> .	* komme til sig selv	
Waking up from <b>hypnosis</b> (U) the accomplice can't	* omkringstående	* klappe (af ng.) (i / af ng.)
<b>recall</b> (the moment) (that) he was <b>hypnotized</b> by a <b>hypnotist</b> .	* give ng. >	* klappen
No more <b>under hypnosis</b> , he <b>recollects</b> (the moment) <b>that</b>	* hypnose	* hilse ng. med >
he was <b>hypnotized by</b> a girl who <b>signalized</b> her beauty	* genkalde sig / huske (det øjeblik) at -	* klappen
<b>by conspicuous</b> blond hair <b>unnoticed</b> as a <b>signal of danger</b> .	* under hypnose	* genkalde sig (ngt.) at -
<b>With a flash of insight</b> he <b>remembers</b> (that) he'd <b>acted</b>	* & være betaget af ng	* signalere / udtrykke ng.
<b>on a sinister purpose</b> , considering blonds <b>easy game for</b> him.	* ved hjælp af ng.	* ubemærket
Falsly believing her to be dumb and easily seduced,	* i et glimt af ng.	* indsiget
he was <b>easy prey</b> who <b>fell victim to</b> his own foolishness.	* udfra ng.	* klarsyn
30 As he had <b>been easy prey for</b> the enchantress,	* skummel	* hensigt
he had soon <b>fallen prey to</b> her and <b>to</b> her <b>sinister design</b> .	* let bytte for ng.	
<b>Being prey to</b> the enchantress and <b>to</b> her charm, he had	* let bytte	* blive offer for ng.
been <b>hypnotized into a passive tool at / in</b> her <b>hands //</b>	* være et let bytte for ng.	
<b>at / in</b> the <b>hands of</b> the cunning enchantress.	* komme i kløerne på ng. / blive offer for ng.	* skummel plan
<b>Harbouring sinister designs</b> , she <b>was up to no good</b> .	* være ...	
<b>Harbouring sinister designs to take signal revenge</b> ,	* hypnotisere ng. til >	* passivt redskab i ngs. hænder
she <b>nursed sinister designs of</b> cheating the whole town.	* i hænderne på ng.	
<b>Signally defeated</b> by her <b>unscrupulous</b> methods,	* nære /	* skumle planer
<b>high and low failed signally</b> .	* gå med >	* være ude på ng.
	* =	* have ond i sinde
	* ... om at -	* tage frygtelig hævn
	* nære / gå med >	* ... om at -
	* eftertrykkeligt	* ~ mentalt besejret
	* høj og lav	* skrupelløs overvældet / lammet
		* & dumpe med at brag

**115 It appears ( that ) the stranger is a psychologist**  
and a practised **hypnotist**.

He has had a **spell as a magician** before becoming  
a **fully trained** and **fully qualified** psychologist.

His first **public appearance** was **at the age of** twenty.

Magicians like **conjurers** only use **conjuring tricks**.

A magician does his **hypnotic** tricks **like magic**  
or **as if by magic**, often using his **wand**.

As his **ideal** and **great example**, a performer's **idol** is often

**10** given **advance programme credit** for their **inspiration**.

Having to **appear before the Justice of the Peace**

**in a magistrate's court**, the accused will **appear in court**  
**charged with theft** and **conspiracy to defraud**.

He will **appear on charges of complicity in a fraud** of  
thousands of pounds / several thousand pounds.

The accomplice's mother **receives a subpoena**  
that **orders** her to **appear as (a) witness** for the defence  
when her son **comes up before the magistrate(s)**  
as an **accessory** / a **party to** fraud.

**20 So 'help me - So help me God,' she murmurs,**  
having sworn to God to tell the truth.

A friend of the stranger's is the **lawyer appearing for**  
the **defendant**; he appears on behalf of the accomplice.

**Counsel for the prosecution submits that** some **evidence**  
is **admissible** while the **counsel for the defence** submits that  
it is **inadmissible**.

The judge listens to the **submissions** of both parties.

**Would you believe**, the enchantress didn't even  
**have** a man - **would you believe it**.

**30** Nevertheless, the accomplice had a happy **spell**;  
it was a magic time **being under a spell**.

He felt happy until the **spell** was **broken**,  
and he **woke up from the spell**.

Having **pinned all his hope on** this **ill-omened** chance,  
he has been **hoping against 'hope'**.

He has **set (all) his hopes on** the enchantress

Having **pinned (all) his hopes on** getting this chance,  
he **pinned his faith on** her, and **pinned all his hopes on** her.

He has **read** her invitation as a good **omen for** success.

\* vise sig at -

\* psykolog

\* hypnotisør

\* ( kort ) tid  
/ periode som  
\* færdiguddannet

\* magiker, trolldmand  
tryllekunstner  
\* =

\* offentlig

\* optræden

\* i en alder af x

\* tryllekunstner

\* tryllekunstner

\* hypnotisk

\* som ved ...

\* =

\* tryllestav

\* idol, forbillede

\* ideal, forbillede

\* =

\* forhånds \* program

\* hæder, ære  
omtale

\* & ånds-  
berigelse

\* komme for >

\* fredsdommer  
underrets -

\* i underretten

\* den anklagede

\* komme for retten

\* anklaget /  
tiltalt for ngt.

\* tyveri

sammensværgelse >  
med svig for øje

\* stå tiltalt for meddelagtighed i ngt.

\* bedrageri på /  
svindel til x

\*

\* modtage >

\* ( vidne-) stævning

\* beordre ng til at -

\* møde >

\* som vidne for ng.

\* komme for >

\* underrettsdommer  
( pl. ) underretten

\* medskyldig i ngt.

\* Åh, hjælp mig

\* ... Gud

\* mumle

\*

\* advokat  
sagfører

\* optræde på vegne af ng.

\* person, der forsvares

\* anklagemyndigheden

\* fremføre at -

\* vidneudsagn  
bevis

\* acceptabel, tilladelig

\* forsvaret

\* u-

\* indlæg

\* vil du tro

\* ~ have et sexuel forhold

\* skulle man tro det

\* kort periode

\* være ramt af (en) fortryllelse

\* fortryllelse

\* bryde /  
hæve <

\* vågne op af ...

\* sætte sit håb til /  
lade sit håb afhænge af ngt.

\* ulyksalig  
skæbnesvanger

\* klamre sig til håbet

\* sætte sit håb til

\* ... at -

\* sætte sin lid til ng.

\* <<

\* ~ opfatte / tolke ngt. som ngt.

\* varsel om ngt.

<b>116 All his hopes (were) centred (up)on her.</b>	* ... dreje sig om ng.
This chance was his <b>one hope</b> , and she was his <b>only hope</b> .	* være ens eneste ...
He had <b>hoped against hope that</b> the chance would	* klamre sig til det håb at -
<b>lead to</b> or <b>result in</b> successful outcome.	* føre til ng. * resultere / ende i ng. * resultat
<b>Hopelessly in love</b> (with her), he had been <b>full of hope for</b>	* håbløst forelsket * fuld af håb for
the future, and all her lies had <b>kept false hope</b> (U) <b>alive</b> .	* holde liv i falske forhåbninger ( * i live / levende )
The lies had just <b>kept a forlorn / a vain hope alive</b>	* = ( forloren / falsk ) ~ udsigtsløs * = ( tom / forgæves )
The day of her sudden disappearance, she had invited	*
her <b>unsuspecting</b> companion to watch the <b>sun setting</b> /	* intetanende * solen gå ned
<b>10 the sunset</b> when the sun <b>sinks below</b> the <b>horizon</b> .	* solnedgang * synke ned under > * horisonten
The <b>weather forecaster</b> had <b>predicted</b> good weather.	* vejrpofet meteorolog * forudsige ng.
A <b>spell</b> of <b>sunny</b> weather was <b>forecast(&lt;ed)</b> .	* kort periode * solrigt * forudsagt
Trusting in the <b>weather forecast</b> he had been <b>hoping for</b>	* vejrsigt * håbe på ng.
a <b>sunny</b> day and a <b>clear</b> sky at the <b>setting of the sun</b> /	* solrig * klar * ved solnedgangstid
<b>at sunset</b> on that <b>Sunday</b> – but as the <b>weather</b> is <b>unsettled</b> ,	* = * på den søndag * vejret ( er ) > * ustadigt
<b>changeable</b> , <b>little predictable</b> , or <b>unpredictable</b> ,	* foranderligt omskifteligt * lidet forudsigeligt * u-
there was rain first with sunny <b>spells</b> later, then <b>showers</b>	* periode ophold * byge
and sunny <b>intervals</b> , and a <b>bright spell</b> late in the evening.	* interval ophold * skyfri periode periode med klar himmel
As the <b>evening sun brightens</b> ( <b>up</b> ⇔ ) the sky,	* aftensolen * lysne ng.
<b>20 the sky brightens</b> just before the <b>setting of the sun</b> .	* lysne * solnedgang
<b>Hopefully</b> , she would be there <b>in good time</b> ,	* forhåbentlig * i god tid
but <b>by</b> 11 o'clock, long after <b>sunset</b> , she still hadn't <b>appeared</b> .	* ved ...-tiden * solnedgang * dukke op
All he could do was <b>wait and hope</b> .	* vente og håbe
He <b>waited for</b> (quite) a <b>while in hope of</b> her appearance.	* vente > * i nogen tid * i håb om ng.
He waited a <b>long while in the hope of</b> a late appearance.	* i lang tid ( temmelig lang ) * i håbet om ng.
He waited (for) a couple of hours <b>in the fond hope that</b> she	* i det forfængelige håb at - ( * kærlig, øm )
was just <b>delayed owing to unforeseeable circumstances</b> .	* forsinket * pga. ng. * uforudselige * om- stændigheder
He <b>hung on for</b> a (long) <b>time in the vain hope that</b>	* holde ud ~ vente * i det forfængelige håb at - ( i lang tid )
she was just late owing to an <b>unforeseen delay</b> .	* uforudset * forsinkelse
<b>30 His eyes glazed</b> as he sat there <b>staring in front of</b> him.	* blive glasagtige * stirre hen for sig / ud i det blå
His eyes <b>glazed over</b> , as he sat <b>staring into space</b> .	* = * =
<b>Reluctant to abandon hope</b> , he had desperately	* utilbøjelig til / kvie sig ved at - * opgive håbet
<b>kept</b> his mind <b>busy a little / short while</b> , wondering why	* holde ( ~ tankerne ) beskæftiget * et kort stykke tid * spekulere / undre sig over hvorfor -
<b>the moon</b> is sometimes <b>waxing</b> and sometimes <b>waning</b> .	* månen * tiltage * aftage
As a <b>clear demonstration of</b> the <b>unpredictability of</b>	* klar demonstration af / * uforudsigelighed af ng.
the weather, it was a <b>cloudy</b> night with <b>wet spells</b>	* skyet * våd / regn- periode
when he eventually <b>gave up / relinquished</b> ( all ) <b>hope</b> .	* opgive håbet ( al håb )
Having <b>lost hope</b> , he <b>returned home</b> quite late	* miste håbet * vende hjem
unable to fall asleep <b>for the rest of</b> the night.	* resten af ( natten )



117 Even if <b>hopes for</b> the missing enchantress were <b>fading</b> ,	* håb for ng. svinder
he <b>clung</b> ( `on ) to a last <b>hope</b> that he would <b>hear from</b> her.	* klynge sig til > * håb om at - * høre fra ng.
<b>What a hope ! Disappeared / vanished without (a) trace</b>	* hvilket ( forgæves ) håb * ~ være sporløst forsvundet
she seems to have <b>disappeared / ... off the face of the earth.</b>	* forsvinde fra jordens overflade
Will he <b>hear</b> anything <b>from</b> her ? <b>Some hope !</b>	* = *
<b>False hope</b> (U) in fact: a <b>fond</b> , <b>forlorn</b> and <b>vain hope</b> .	* falske forhåbninger * naivt * falsk * frugtesløs
It was <b>ill-founded</b> hope but he was still <b>hopeful</b> .	* ilde funderet ( håb ) * fuld af håb
He <b>felt hopeful</b> : he <b>felt hopeful that</b> he would	* føle sig fortrøstningsfuld * ... med hensyn til at
<b>hear from</b> her, but he <b>didn't hear</b> anything <b>from</b> her.	* høre fra ng. * ikke høre ngt. fra ng.
10 He neither <b>heard a word</b> nor <b>had a word from</b> her.	* ... et ord / en lyd fra *
<b>Hopelessly</b> in love, he felt <b>lonely / lonesome</b> and <b>hopeless</b> .	* håbløst * ensom * uden håb
Although her disappearance <b>disappointed</b> his <b>hopes</b> , they	* skuffe > * forhåbning
didn't really <b>vanish</b> until he was <b>dehypnotized</b> by the stranger.	* forsvinde * afhypnotisere
The story of the fraud and the <b>fraudulent</b> blond is	* bedragerisk
<b>front-page news</b> and <b>appears in</b> all the national news <b>media</b> .	* forside nyhed * komme frem i * medier
While the media <b>show</b> the accomplice little or some <b>charity</b> ,	* mild- / velvillig- / overbæren- barmhjertig- / næstekærlighed
they show no <b>charity towards</b> the enchantress.	* ... overfor ng.
She had had the <b>foresight to</b> prepare her disappearance.	* forudseenhed til at -
and <b>be</b> ( <b>over the hills and</b> ) <b>far away leaving no trace</b> .	* over alle bjerge * uden at efterlade sig nogen spor
20 What a <b>sly old devil !</b> She had <b>covered</b> her <b>tracks</b> .	* ... snu / lusket ... * skjule / slette sine spor
As some media are rather <b>sensation-seeking</b> ,	* ...-søgende, ~ -lysten
the <b>media</b> often <b>stand(s) accused</b> of <b>sensation-seeking</b> .	* medierne * stå anklaget for ngt. * sensationslyst medieverdenen ( - søgning )
<b>Wondering at</b> their own lack of scepticism, the townspeople	* undre sig over ngt.
who <b>are tared with the same brush as</b> the accomplice	* være tjæret med > * den samme børste som ng. ~ have en rem af huden
have a more <b>charitable view of</b> his actions.	* mild, etc. * syn på ngt.
They have to think about him a lot more <b>charitably</b> .	* =
( The <b>medium of</b> ) <b>television</b> (TV) is the modern <b>medium of</b>	* medie * fjernsyn * middel
<b>communication</b> .	* kommunikation meddelelse
The <b>accused's appearance</b> in court is <b>front-page</b> news;	* den anklagede * optræden * i retten * forsidenyhed
30 it <b>appears on</b> the <b>front page</b> of the <b>newspapers</b> .	* være på > * forside * avis
In order to <b>punished</b> him, a court of law may <b>impose</b>	* straffe ng. * ~ idømme ( ng. )
a <b>harsh, severe, lenient, or light punishment</b> on him.	* hård * streng * mild * = * straf
<b>Passing sentence, imposing a sentence</b> on him,	* afsige dom / straf * idømme ng. en straf
the Court may <b>sentence</b> him <b>to prison / jail</b> .	* dømme ng. til > * fængsel ~ idømme ng. fængselsstraf
Will he <b>receive</b> a <b>stiff, heavy, severe</b> and <b>long sentence</b> ?	* få / * hård * = * = * lang * dom / straf modtage > streng ( afsagt af en domstol )
' We <b>hope not</b> , ' his fellow townsfolk reply.	* håbe det ikke
Will he <b>be given</b> a <b>light, lenient, or short</b> sentence ?	* få / * mild * = * kort ... modtage >
' I ( <b>certainly</b> ) <b>hope so</b> , ' his mother <b>continues</b> ,	* håbe det * fortsætte * ... bestemt
<b>wondering about</b> the future. <i>Look at page 200 !!</i>	* spekulere over ngt.

118 When the Court has **reached a judicial decision**,

the **presiding judge pronounces the decree**,  
pri'zaiding  
and the sentence in **consequence**.

The accomplice is **convicted on charges of fraud**.

**Convicted of fraud**, the **fraudster** (E) is, however,  
given a lenient sentence as he, much **to his relief**,  
is considered a helpless victim of **fraudulent** hypnosis.

( **Sitting in prison** is no joke. )

After the **passing of the sentence**, the **convict**

**10 breathes / heaves a sigh of relief** but **somehow**  
he **feels a fraud** accepting people's **sympathy**.

**Whatever will become of** the accomplice ?

Will the **convicted** accomplice **lose** his **self-respect** ?

' **I should hope not**,' the stranger answers.

' Will he **get** ( ) **back / regain** his **self-respect** ? '

**Expressing the hope that** he will, the stranger **goes on**,

' **So I should hope – I should hope so.**'

The accomplice tells him about his **hopes of reconciliation**;  
his **hopes for a reconciliation with** the deceived townsfolk.

**20** The accomplice **can't help** thinking about the past.

He **can't help** wondering; he **can't help but** wonder.

Being a **beacon / symbol of hope**, the stranger is  
the accomplice's **last hope**; the **last hope for** the accomplice.

There is just one small **ray of hope**.

An apparently crazy idea is a **glimmer of hope**.

**Ignoring** all warnings and just **hoping for the best**,  
the accomplice **commences to write in the hope of** regaining  
his self-respect by **giving** the readers **insight into** the drama.

**30** It doesn't really **help matters** lacking self-respect.

The accomplice would **appreciate** someone helping him  
so the stranger **volunteers his services as** an assistant.

Without **pretension**, he **volunteers for** assistance.

**Volunteering to assist** the accomplice **in writing a book**,  
and **helping him in** becoming a competent **writer**, the stranger  
**assists and helps** the accomplice **with his writing**.

**Having no pretension(s) to fame / be (<ing ) famous**,  
the accomplice **commences writing with the help of**  
the stranger, and **keeps on with his assistance**.

\* nå til en juridisk / retslig afgørelse

\* retspræsident \* forkynde > \* domsafgørelse

\* som følge deraf  
den deraf følgende  
\* dømt på anklage(-r ) om

\* domfælde ng. for / \* bedrager  
finde ng. skyldig i ng.  
\* til ngs. ( store ) lettelse

\* bedragerisk

\* sidde i fængsel

\* domsafsigelse \* den dømte

\* ~ drage et lettelsens suk \* på en måde  
ånde lettet op  
\* føle sig som bedrager \* medfølelse

\* hvad mon der vill blive af ng&t. ?

\* dømt \* miste > \* selvrespekt

\* det vil jeg da ikke håbe

\* få ng. tilbage / genvinde > \* selvrespekt

\* udtrykke det håb at -

\* det vil jeg da håbe

\* håb om ng. \* forsoning

\* håb om / forhåbninger til ng.

\* lade være med / undgå at -

\* =

\* ( sømærke, fyr ) ~ lys om / symbol på > \* håb

\* være ngs. sidste håb \* ... for ng.

\* stråle ( glimt ) af > \* håb

\* glimt ( lysskær ) af > \* =

\* ignorere / \* håbe på det bedste  
overhøre / -se ng.

\* begynde at > \* skrive \* i håbet om at -  
( som forfatter )

\* give ng. indsigt i / viden om ng.

\* gavne sagen

\* værdsætte / sætte pris på ng. ⇔ at -

\* tilbyde sig ( sine tjenester ) som ng.

\* selvforherligelse \* tilbyde sig til ng.

\* tilbyde sig til at - \* skrive > \* bog

\* hjælpe ng. til at - \* skriver, forfatter

\* bistå > \* hjælpe ng. > \* med ng. \* skriveri  
forfattervirksomhed

\* ikke have præentioner /  
overdrevne forestillinger om at -

\* begynde at - ( skrive ) \* med ngs. hjælp

\* blive ved / fortsætte \* med ngs. bistand

119 The stranger is a <b>tremendous help</b> to the accomplice.	* ng. er >	* enorm kolossal	* hjælp for ng.
His advice is a <b>big help</b> - a <b>great help</b> to the accomplice.	* ngt. er >	* stor	* =
Writing a book <b>gives hope</b> to the accomplice.	* give ng. håb		
'I'll never <b>manage it</b> , ' he says <b>hopelessly to begin with</b> .	* klare det	* opgivende	* til at begynde med i begyndelsen
<b>Offering hope</b> to him, writing becomes his <b>greatest hope</b> .	* give ng. håb		* største håb
A book has become his <b>greatest hope</b> for happiness.	* ... om ngt.		
Although it doesn't <b>pretend to</b> be a great work of literature,	* foregive / give sig ud for at -		
it's his <b>only hope</b> : his <b>only hope of rendering</b> the true story.	* eneste håb	* ... om at -	* gengive ngt.
<b>It helps documenting what</b> happened - <b>it helps a lot</b> .	* det hjælper / gavner at -	* dokumentere hvxx -	* ... meget
10 <b>It helps a lot to relive absolutely everything</b> .	* ... meget at -	* genopleve ngt.	* absolut * alt
He couldn't <b>help</b> the way he felt about her.	* ikke kunne gøre noget ved ngt.		
Her charm had a <b>predictable</b> effect on him.	* forudsigeligt		
<b>It helps</b> his <b>concentration</b> if takes a walk.	* det hjælper på ngt.		* koncentration
While <b>engaged on</b> the book, a pill can <b>help</b> once in a while.	* optaget af ngt.		* hjælpe gavne
<b>It helps (to)</b> reduce the pain and <b>helps</b> him ( <b>to</b> ) <b>relax</b> .	* hjælpe med / bidrage til at -		* hjælpe ng. til at
Eight hours of deep <b>sleep helps enormously</b> .	* ( dyb ) søvn	* hjælpe gavne	* enormt
A lot of townspeople have been <b>incredibly</b> stupid too,	* utrolig		
and the <b>awakening</b> has been <b>incredibly</b> painful.	* opvågen		* =
<b>Initially</b> , most of them won't admit more than they <b>can help</b> .	* ~ i begyndelsen til at begynde med	* ~ ng. kan slippe med	
20 Realizing ( that ) they have been <b>unbelievably</b> stupid,	* utroligt		
their <b>rude awakening</b> is <b>unbelievably</b> painful.	* brat opvågen		* =
The glory of her promises had, in fact, <b>stretched credulity</b>	* strække >	* troværdighed ~ det, der er muligt at tro	
<b>not only to the limit, but ( also ) beyond the limit</b> .	* ikke kun >	* til grænsen * men ( også ) * ud over ...	
The <b>credulous</b> townsfolk have been far too easy to <b>deceive</b> .	* lettroende		* bedrage ng.
<b>It strains credulity</b> the way she <b>exploited</b> their <b>credulity</b> .	* ~ det er utroligt	* udnytte / ( mis- ) bruge >	* lettroenhed
<b>More in sorrow than in anger</b> , the <b>deceived</b> dwellers	* mere >	* i sorg * end >	* i vrede * bedragne
<b>stare at</b> their <b>surroundings with unbelieving eyes</b> .	* stirre på ngt.	* omgivelser	* med vantro øjne
The townspeople can't <b>believe</b> their <b>ears</b> / their <b>eyes</b>	* ikke tro sine egne ører / øjne		
when they <b>appreciate</b> / <b>realize what deceptive</b> and <b>deceitful</b>	* opdage / indse hvxx -	* bedragerisk	* =
30 person they have been exposed to as well as	*		
what <b>deception</b> and <b>deceitfulness</b> they have <b>succumbed to</b>	* bedrag / -eri		* bøje sig for ngt.
when she <b>deceitfully presented</b> her <b>creed</b> to the townsfolk.	* bedragerisk	* præsentere / på ... vis	* holdnings- / trosgrundlag
The whole town <b>was caught in a web of deceit</b> , as the en>	* være fanget i >		* spind af bedrag
chantress <b>prevailed (up)on</b> them <b>to believe</b> in her promises.	* overtale ng. til at -		
Her <b>deceit</b> caused <b>delusion(s)</b> and <b>illusion(s)</b> .	* bedrag * ( selv- ) bedrag	* illusion, selvbedrag	
It's <b>well documented that</b> being <b>cheated</b> like that,	* vildfarelse, vrangforestilling	* falsk forestilling	
easily <b>shakes</b> / <b>shatters</b> your <b>belief in</b> yourself,	* vel-	* dokumenteret at -	* narre ng.
and <b>worsens</b> a <b>critical situation</b> .	* ryste ngs. tro på ng.		
Some experiences <b>mark</b> people <b>for the rest of</b> their <b>life</b> .	* forværre ngt.	* kritisk >	* situation
	* mærke ng.	* for resten af >	* livet

**120** Some townspeople consider **disclaiming responsibility**

but then **reason / common sense prevails**.

They **see the error of** their **ways**.

' **Believing is seeing** ' ; you believe it when you see it.

' **Believe me - believe you me !** ' the townspeople have been **taught a lesson** and hopefully **learnt** their **lesson**.

Many people feel as if they had **signed away** their life.

They stare **unbelievably** at the **sad remains** (pl.) of their **belongings**, and **gaze at** the **sad remnants** (pl.) of their **10** property, **unbelieving**.

The enchantress had **dashed / shattered** their **hopes**.

She has escaped **head over heels**, and is **certainly over the hills and far away**, so justice will never **prevail**.

The stranger **is credited with** the success.

All the **credit must go to** the stranger.

The **proceedings** of a public meeting **give** the stranger all the **credit** so all the success **is credited to** the stranger.

He and his **deed get** all the **credit** they **deserve**.

As the town wants to **pay** its **respect to** the stranger,

**20** it wants to **do** the stranger **an honour**.

So the town **does** him the **signal** and **rare honour of** making him **honorary citizen**.

**Modesty does** the stranger **credit** and great **honour**.

The stranger can **take the credit for** the success **with a clear conscience**.

**To** the stranger's **credit**, he never **holds** the townspeople **up to ridicule**; he never **ridicules** them.

People **wonder about** his political and religious **creed**.

' **Don't hesitate to** contact me if you **have** any **queries** -

**30** don't be **hesitant about** contacting me if you have

anything to **query**, ' the stranger **insists**.

' How do we know in whom and what to have confidence ? ' \*

a sceptic **queries**, as he's being **given credit** for having at least tried to oppose the impostor.

**To the credit side**, the cheat has taught people a lesson.

Some people don't **appreciate** being **pitied** so their inner strength will enable them to **prevail over** life's **obstacles**.

The **prevailing / current attitude** and **mood** is optimistic.

Some people use alcohol as a **crutch**.

\* fralægge sig >

\* ansvaret

\* sund fornuft

\* sejr, herske  
være udbredt

\* indse sine fejltrin

\* man vil se det, før man tror det

\* tro mig

\* =

\* lært >

\* - lektion

\* =

\* =

\* fraskrive sig ngt.

\* vantro

\* sørgelige rester

\* ejendele \* stirre ( tomt ) på > \* sørgelige \* rester

\* vantro

\* slynge ( og knuse ) ( knuse ngs. håb / forhåbning )

\* over hals og hoved

\* bestemt, givetvis

\* ~ over alle bjerge \* ( retfærdigheden ) ~ ske fyldest

\* være tilkendt æren for ( norm. pass.)

\* æren må tilfalde ngt.

\* officel skreven report

\* give ng. >

\* anerkendelse

\* være tilkendt ng.

\* dåd \* få ( al den ) anerkendelse \* fortjene ngt.  
gerning

\* vise ng. >

\* & ære

\* vise ng. >

\* en ære

\* ... den ... at -

\* bemærkelsesværdig

\* æresborger

\* beskedenhed

\* tjene ng. til ... ære

\* =

\* tage æren for ngt.

\* med >

\* god samvittighed

\* til ngs. ære

\* holde ng. >

\* for nar

\* latterliggøre ng.

\* spekulere over >

\* trosgrundlag

\* tøve med at -

\* forespørgsel  
spørgsmål

\* =

\* stille ... ved /  
betvivle ngt.

\* insistere  
fast holde på

\* ( fore-) spørge

\* givet æren for at -

\*

\* på plussiden

\* ( ikke ) bryde sig om at -

\* ynke ng.

\* vinde over / overvinde ngt.

\* genvordigheder

\* fremherskende

\* holdning

\* stemning

\* ( krykke ) ~ ( afhængighedsskabende ) hjælpemiddel

**121 Obviously, it takes** energy and **cunning to survive**

the **consequences of the deceit** and the **results of the cheat**.

The men can hardly **provide for** their wife and family.

As the townspeople have to **roll with the punches**,  
solidarity and a lot of **cooperation** are **obviously** important.

**Co-operation (E&) obviously helps progress.**

**Helpfulness helps ( to )** break the unhappy **spell**.

Everybody **appreciates** some help, and **every little helps**.

It seems an **incredible** and **unbelievable** amount of work  
**10** restoring the **welfare** of the town; it seems an **incredibly**  
and **unbelievably** large amount.

' **Incredably**, she'd ruined the town in a **fortnight's time** –  
**unbelievably**, it had been ruined during the past **fortnight**,'  
people have said as **the scales fell from their eyes**.

**Immediately afterwards**, the **gloomy** situation **shows**  
**no sign of** improvement; **on the contrary**, there are  
**signs that** the situation is **worsening**.

The town needs an **initiative for** the economic process;  
it needs an **initiative** to **set it on its feet again**.

**20** The stranger **uses** his **initiative**.

**Seizing the initiative in** the decision-making process,  
he **takes the initiative in restoring** the economy.

**Acting on his own initiative**, he **initiates** activities  
that will **assist** the economic process and **restore** hope.

Soon there are **signs that** the situation is **improving**;  
the situation **shows signs that** things are **looking up**.

Some economic **forecasters** predict improvement.

Some economic **reports forecast** improvement.

The **forecast** is a **hopeful sign** that **gives hope to** the town.

**30** The latest economic **figures** are a **glimmer / ray of hope**.

The fact that the figures **show signs of** improvement  
**offers hope to** the town, and **holds out hope for** the future.

The economic and mental **restoration** is **showing**  
**definite signs of life**; some people **whistle** cheerful **tunes**.

As the stranger never **loses** the **initiative** in the struggle,  
people's **hopes revive**, and the town **begins to hope** again.

**Little by little** the figures **show every sign of** improvement.

After a while the situation **shows all signs of** success.

**A lot of effort goes into** improving the situation.

\* selvsagt \* det ⇔ \* snedighed \* klare sig  
helt klart kræver > udspekulerethed igennem >  
\* konsekvens / \* bedrag \* resultat / \* bedrag  
følge af > følge af >  
\* ~ forsørge kone og børn  
\* rulle med > \* stødene  
~ tilpasse sig vanskelighederne  
\* samarbejde \* indlysende / helt klart / selvsagt  
( vigtigt )  
\* = \* hjælpe / fremme ngt. \* fremadskridt  
at komme videre  
\* hjælpsomhed \* hjælpe med ( til ) at - \* fortryllelse  
tjenstvillighed periode  
\* værdsætte / sættepris på ngt. \* lidt har også ret  
\* utrolig \* =  
\* velfærd \* =  
\* =  
\* på 14 dage / to uger  
\* utroligt \* to uger  
14 dage  
\* der faldt som skæl fra ng's øjne  
\* lige efter \* dystre \* vise >  
\* inget / ingen tegn på ngt. \* tværtimod  
\* tegn på at - \* blive værre  
forværres  
\* initiativ / plan for ngt.  
\* ... til at -  
\* bruge sin foretagsomhed  
\* tage initiativet i ngt.  
\* tage initiativ til at - \* genoprette / -opbygge ngt.  
\* handle på eget initiativ \* igangsætte ngt.  
\* fremme / hjælpe på ngt. \* genoprette ngt.  
\* tegn på at - \* blive bedre  
\* = \* =  
\* ... profet / spåmand  
\* rapport \* forudse / spå ngt.  
\* forudsigelse \* lovende tegn som - \* give håb til ng.  
\* tal \* glimt / antydning af  
\* vise > \* tegn på ngt.  
\* give håb til ng. \* ... for > \* fremtiden  
\* genopretning \* vise >  
/ -etablering  
\* afgørende \* tegn på > \* liv \* fløjte \* melodi  
~ at være kommet i gang  
\* tabe / miste > \* & handlekraft  
\* forhåbninger \* få nyt live \* begynde at håbe  
\* lidt efter lidt \* vise alle tegn på ngt.  
efterhånden  
\* vise alle tegn på ngt.  
\* en masse \* energi \* gå til at -

122 The improvement that is **hoped for** eventually comes.

Eventually a **reliable** economic **forecast** gives the town  
a **true sense of hopefulness**.

The **hoped-for** improvement finally appears.

**It is predicted that** the improvement will continue.

The improvement **is predicted to** ( pas. ) continue.

Their new **policy** has brought the **hoped-for** improvement.

As they **have every reason to hope for recovery**,  
the townspeople have a **reasonable hope of recovering**.

**10 Having every hope that** the economy will improve,  
they **have every hope of an economic recovery**.

**Conceiving a hope**, even the **hard-core** pessimists  
**begin to hope**.

As even the pessimists are **hopeful about** the future,  
you may **hear** even them **whistle / whistling** a cheerful **tune**.

They, too, **have a feeling of hopefulness**.

The future seems quite **hopeful**.

Everybody is now **hopeful of** ( E ) returning **to normal** ( U ).

**Faith, Hope and Charity** again have **significance for**  
**20** the townspeople's behaviour.

Even if there have been many changes **in recent years**  
still **charity begins at `home**.

There's an **urgent need** for **charity** and **charitable work**.

**Assisting** ( the town ) **in** organizing charity,  
the stranger **helps** ( the town ) **in** organizing charitable work  
and in **establishing charity** organizations.  
such as **charitable institutions, foundations** and **trusts**.

His **good** and **charitable deeds** speak for themselves.

Having **helped** ( the town ) ( **to** ) establish **charities**,

**30** the stranger needs people to **assist** and **help**.

Volunteers **assist** and **help** the charities.  
- `tiêz

**Assisting** ( the charities ) **in** their charitable work,  
volunteers **assist** ( them ) **with** the organization of the work.

**Helping** ( them ) **with** their **charity arrangements**,  
they **make arrangements for charity events**.

**Charitable** groups **organize** and **arrange charity concerts**,  
**charity parties, charity performances** etc. in order to  
**raise money for** charity / charities / **charitable purposes**.

Being **collectively** cheated was **not the end of the world**.

\* håbet på

\* troværdig

\* sand følelse af >

\* som man håber / -ede på

\* det forudses at -

\* ngt. forudses at -

\* politik

\* have al mulig grund til at håbe på

\* fornuftig, rimelig  
( have et begrundet håb om at )

\* have det bedste håb om at-

\* ... om ngt.

\* undfange / ( op- ) fatte > \* håb \* ~ hårde kerne af ng.

\* begynde at ...

\* forhåbningsfuld /  
fuld af håb med hensyn til ngt.

\* høre ng. >

\* ... en følelse af forhåbningsfuldhed  
/ optimisme

\* lovende

\* fuld af håb om at -

\* tro, håb og ( næste- ) kærlighed

\*

\* i de seneste / sidst år

\* velgørenhed / næstekærlighed \* starter \* hjemme  
( ~ fej for egen dør, før du fejrer for andres )

\* presserende \* behov for > \* = \* velgørende arbejde  
velgørenhedsarbejde

\* hjælpe ( ng. ) /  
være ( ng. ) behjælpelig med at -  
=

\* etablere /  
oprette ngt.

\* velgørende

\* god

\* hjælpe ( ng. ) med at -

\* assistere

\* ... ng.

\* hjælpe ( ng. ) med ngt.

\*

\* =

\* gøre / lave forberedelser til

\* velgørende \* organisere \* arrangere \* velgørenheds-  
ngt. ngt. koncert

\* ...selskab  
/ fest

\* rejse ( penge ) til >

\* kollektivt  
alle som en

\* forudsigelse  
prognose

\* forventningsfuldhed

\* man håbede på

\* bedring  
opsving

\* komme sig

\* økonomisk \* genrejsning

\* fløjte > \* melodi

\* til det normale

\* betydning for ng.

\* organisation

\* stiftelse \* fond

\* gerning

\* velgørenhedsinstitution

\* hjælpe

\* velgørenhedsarrangement

\* =

\* ... forestilling

\* velgørende formål

\* ~ ikke verdens undergang

<b>123</b> The <b>tireless</b> and <b>untiring</b> volunteers work with <b>unflagging</b> energy, <b>indefatigable</b> in their <b>tireless</b> and <b>untiring</b> efforts to <b>do a good</b> and <b>charitable deeds</b> .	* utrættelig * = * = * = * gøre > * god * velgørenheds - * gerning	* = * = * =
<b>With the aim of</b> helping the <b>hardest hit</b> victims of the fraud, <b>indefatigable</b> volunteers <b>collect</b> money <b>for charities</b> .	* med det ( for-) mål at - * hårdest / værst > * ramt * utrættelig * samle penge ind til ...	
Collecting money <b>for charitable purposes</b> , they hope to <b>get</b> a lot of money <b>for charity</b> .	* til > * velgørende * formål * få ( penge ) * til velgørenhed	
When people <b>donate</b> / give money <b>to</b> charity / charities / charitable purposes, they expect as much as possible of it to <b>go to</b> charity / charities / charitable purposes.	* donere / skænke / give ngt. til ngt. * * gå til ngt.	
<b>10</b> The <b>charity shops</b> (E) have <b>charitable status</b> (E). <b>It is hoped that</b> over £ 2000 will be raised. Together with <b>charitable donations</b> and <b>charitable gifts</b> the result <b>exceeds</b> (their) <b>expectations</b> . <b>Exceeding</b> £ 3000 it <b>exceeds</b> their <b>wildest hopes</b> . The <b>aim of</b> charity is to <b>help</b> people in dire need, so the charities <b>donate</b> money <b>to</b> families in distress, and <b>offer</b> financial <b>assistance to</b> people <b>on</b> low <b>incomes</b> . Organizing <b>self-help</b> , one <b>charity aims to help</b> both <b>adults</b> and children ( <b>to</b> ) <b>help</b> themselves.	* genbrugsbutik * man håber at - * velgørende * & bidrag * = * gave * overgå > * ( ngs. ) forventninger * komme op på mere end * ... vildeste forhåbninger * mål med ngt. * hjælpe ng. * donere / skænke ngt. til ng. * tilbyde / * ( økonomisk ) bistand til ng. * med ( lav ) > yde > indkomst * selvhjælp * velgørehedsorganisation * sigte mod * ~ yde > * voksen * hjælp til selvhjælp	
<b>20</b> The organization arranges courses to <b>assist</b> both <b>skilled</b> and <b>unskilled</b> workers <b>to</b> return to the <b>labour market</b> . The charity <b>helps</b> them <b>so that</b> they can help themselves. <b>Self-help</b> groups <b>help</b> people <b>help themselves</b> <b>in solving</b> their <b>problems, going around / E&amp; about</b> a job etc. <b>God helps them that help themselves</b> . <b>Ready with advice</b> , the groups <b>offer</b> practical <b>assistance</b> ; practical <b>assistance with</b> all kinds of problems. The groups provide advice and <b>assistance in</b> finding a job Much organization must be <b>made by prior arrangement</b> (U).	* hjælpe ng. > * faglært * ufaglært * til at - * arbejdsmarked * hjælpe ng. til at - * selvhjælps- * hjælpe ng. til at hjælpe sig selv * med at - * løse > * problem * ~ klare > * arbejde opgave * hjælp dig selv, så hjælper Gud dig * parat med > * råd * tilbyde > * bistand * bistand med ngt. * ... med at - * forudgående * & aftale	
<b>30</b> Yet, many families have to <b>temporarily live on charity</b> . Although their pride won't allow them to <b>accept charity</b> , many families have to <b>provisionally live off charity</b> . <b>Availing</b> themselves <b>of</b> any <b>opportunity to</b> get work, these people, living <b>in reduced</b> <b>circumstances</b> , ask for work, not <b>charity</b> . <b>Out of charity</b> we should <b>do a good deed a day</b> . <b>It matters</b> ( <b>to</b> our <b>neighbour</b> ) <b>what</b> we do and <b>who</b> we are so may charity and common sense <b>abide</b> forever / in all of us.	* midlertidig * leve af > * velgørenhed * acceptere / godtage / modtage ... * midlertidig * leve af ... * benytte sig af / udnytte > * mulighed for / lejlighed til at - * ~ under trange kår * godgørehed * af næstekærlighed * ~ gøre dagens gode gerning * ( det ) betyde noget ( for ~ næsten ) hvxx - * forblive + adv.	

**124 It helps** being able to talk about a problem.

**It helps** talking about it; **it helps matters** talking about it.

This should **help (to) reduce** the problems and the pain.

It would **be helpful for** people **to see** the damage

**for themselves.**

The town's economic **predicament indicates ( that )**  
the enchantress has been **helping** herself **to** a lot of money.

People who are **up to no good** ought to be given /  
have **a taste / dose of** their **own`medicine**.

**10** Most of the townspeople manage to **exorcize** the unhappy  
memories **from** their minds.

A crowd ( of hungry people ) **assemble / gather / collect**  
as a charity offers free meals.

Everybody can have a **generous helping**.

If you get a **small helping**, a **charity worker**  
**helps you to** a second **helping**.

' Can I **help** you **to** some salat ? ' he may ask and add,

' If you want something to drink, just **help yourself**. '

Social gathering may be **the best`medicin**.

**20** Although social **gatherings** may **do good**,  
medicine may be **unavoidable** to **do** a patient **good**.

As medicine may be **the only effective method** or **remedy**  
so a patient must **remember** to **take** his **medicin**.

Some people **are / feel all the better for** a medicine  
while some people **are / feel none the better for** it.

A treatment may **be of ( little / not much ) use**  
or ( **of** ) **no use ( to** a patient ); sometimes **it's all in vain**.

**It makes no difference** – It is all **to / of no avail**.

**Going for a stroll**, the stranger realizes the roads are all

**30** well **signposted** (E); no one will be **hopelessly lost**.

Enjoying a **slow** relaxed **solitary** walk, he **strolls along**  
enjoying the **shop signs, pub signs** and **inn signs**  
made by skilled **sign painters** and **sign writers**.

Like a few other **strollers**, he **drops into** the pub  
to have a **beer at the sign of** the Red Lion.

The **image** of the lion **signifies** power and strength.

On a map, he reads the **list of ( conventional ) signs**  
and the list of **signs** and **abbreviations**

**Leaving a tip**, he **gives** the waiter a generous **tip**.

\* det hjælper / gavner / nytter at -

\* =

\* hjælpe med at -

\* formindske ngt.

\* nyttigt for ng.

\* se / opleve ngt. >

\* med egne øjne

\* knibe

\* bemægtige / tilrane sig ngt.

\* have ondt i sinde

\* ~ stege i dit eget fedt

\* mane ngt. bort >

\* fra ngt.

\* samles

\*

\* stor portion

\* lille ...

\* velgørenhedsarbejder

\* servere ngt. for ng.

\* =

\* tage selv

\* socialt samvær

\* sammenkomst

\* gøre godt  
hjælpe

\* uomgængelig for at -

\* gøre ng. godt  
hjælpe ng.

\* den eneste effektive > \* metode  
( & det eneste der hjælper )

\* middel

\* huske at -

\* tage sin ...

\* få det bedre af ngt.

\* ikke ...

\* til ringe / ikke megen hjælp

\* til ingen nytte

\* det er helt forgæves  
& hjælper ikke noget  
\* til ingen nytte

\* ikke gøre nogen forskel

\* gå en slentre- / spadseretur

\* afmærke ngt. med skilte

\* håbløst faret vild

\* langsom \* enlig ( gåtur )

\* slentre / spadserer afsted

\* forretningsskilt

\* kroskilt

\* skiltemaler

\* =

\* slendrende person

\* dumpe ind på

\* øl

\* ved skiltet af > \* ( røde ) løve  
~ på den røde løve

\* billede af ( løve )

\* betyde / være tegn på ngt.

\* liste med >

\* ( hævdunden ) tegn

( = signaturforklaring )

\* tegn og forkortelser

\* efterlade >

\* ~ drikkepenge

\* give ng. >

\* =



<b>125</b> A book of the <b>humiliating</b> deceit <b>appears the year after</b> .	* ydmygende / udsendt	* blive offentliggjort	* året efter
It's a <b>cautionary tale about</b> lack of <b>healthy scepticism</b> .	* advarende	* fortælling om ngt.	* sund skepsis
Much of the material hasn't <b>appeared on print</b> before.	* ... trykt / offentliggjort		
A <b>rare picture</b> of the enchantress <b>appears on</b> the <b>front of</b> the <b>book</b> , and the accomplice's thanks for the townspeople's forgiveness <b>appears in</b> the <b>front of</b> the <b>book</b> .	* sjældent billede	* ses / være > * på forsiden af >	
In his conclusion, the author <b>sounds</b> a <b>cautionary note</b> ;	* bog		
never <b>neglect</b> a <b>word</b> or <b>note</b> of <b>caution</b> .	* vise sig	* ~ forrest i >	* bog
<b>Showing considerable talent for</b> writing, the accomplice	* lade > lyde / udtrykke >	* advarende	* notits
<b>10</b> has <b>signposted for</b> the <b>reader</b> the points of the story.	* negligere / tilsidesætte ngt.	* ord * notits ( til > )	* advarsel vejledning
A <b>talented</b> writer knows the <b>importance of signposting</b> .	* vise >	* betragtelig	* talent for ngt.
The <b>chapter headings</b> are <b>humorous signposts to</b> the <b>content</b> of the chapters.	* gøre ng . tydeligt opmærksom på ngt.		* læser
As the story never follows a <b>highly predictable</b> pattern, and the ending is not at all <b>entirely predictable</b> , the book <b>is predicted to</b> be an exciting ( <b>best</b> > ) <b>seller</b> .	* markere ngt. for ng.		
Self-irony <b>in usage</b> is the <b>signature</b> of the <b>gifted</b> writer.	* talentfuld	* vigtigheden af ngt.	* tydeliggørelse markering
The computer has a <b>spellcheck</b> (<er) / a <b>spelling checker</b> which <b>spellchecks</b> ( the <b>text</b> ), i.e. it <b>checks</b> ( the text ) for	* kapitel	* overskrift	* humoristisk
<b>20</b> <b>spelling mistakes</b> by <b>underlining</b> the <b>misspellings</b> .	* indhold		* fingerpeg vink, markør
The accomplice is a bad <b>speller</b> , <b>hopeless at spelling</b> .	* højst forudsigelig		
As he is a <b>hopeless</b> (eE) <b>speller</b> , his spelling is <b>terrible</b> .	* helt og aldeles ...		
In school in a list of difficult <b>spellings</b> , he always <b>made</b> a lot of <b>spelling mistakes</b> ; he was <b>hopelessly confused</b> .	* ( være ) forudsagt / spået at -		* sællert ( bestseller )
He says his schools was <b>hopeless</b> (E) as even if he sat <b>at / in the front of</b> the class, he never <b>learned how to spell</b> .	* i sprogbrug	* kendemærke	* begavet meget talentfuld
The difference between <b>current</b> English and American <b>usage</b> and <b>spelling</b> often <b>causes</b> ( people ) <b>trouble</b> .	* stavekontrol		
At school, each <b>class</b> was worth a number of <b>credits</b> .	* stavekontrollere ( tekst )	* kontrollere ( tekst ) for >	
<b>30</b> Student are <b>in the first</b> , second, third etc. <b>year E/A grade</b> .	* stavefejl	* understrege >	* =
The computer has a <b>spreadsheet</b> .	* staver	* håbløs til >	* stavning
When he <b>does</b> a <b>sum in addition</b> , and <b>add</b> a and b, he uses a <b>plus sign</b> or <b>plus mark</b> .	* håbløs		* forfærdelig
You have to be familiar with the <b>mathematical signs</b> .	* stavemåde		* lave >
When he does a <b>subtraction</b> , and <b>subtracts</b> a from b, he uses a <b>minus sign</b> , a <b>subtraction sign / mark</b> ( - ).	* stavefejl	* håbløst	* forvirret
<b>Doing a sum in multiplication</b> ( a <b>multiplied by / times</b> b <b>is / equals / makes</b> c ), he uses a <b>multiplication sign</b> ( x ).	* hådløst elendig		
Numbers may have <b>opposite signs</b> , and <b>change signs</b> .	* foran / forrest i ngt.		* lære at stave
	* nutidig		
	* sprogbrug	* stavning	* volde ( ng. ) besvær
	* fag, kursus		* præstationspoint
	* i / på >	* første etc.	* årgang / niveau
	* regneark	* ~ gå i - - - - - klasse	
	* udregne en sum ved sammenlægning		* sammenregne et plusstykke lægge a og b
	* plus, -tegn		
	* matematisk tegn		
	* subtraktion	* subtrahere / fratrække ngt. fra ngt.	
	* minustegn		* =
	* ~ lave et gangestykke		* ganget med / gange ngt.
	* er / er lig med / bliver ngt.		* gangetegn
	* modsatte	* fortegn	* skifte fortegn

126 A programme E/A program **on radio** or **TV** may have

a **signature tune** and may be **transmitted live**.

tranz`mitid

When a **broadcast** is **signed off**, an **announcer** may **end**  
by saying **goodbye**, or he may **end** it by a **piece of music**.

**Playing music**, some **musicians** play it **without** the **music**.

**Playing a tune** or **melody**, a musician who **reads music**  
is **familiar with notes**, **key** and **time signatures**.

A writer or **composer** may write **under pseudonym**;  
write **above** or **write under** the **signature of** another name.

`su~dënim

10 Once in a while the accomplice **watches TV / television**.

There are many program(me)s to **see / watch on TV**.

He **watches** football **on** ( the ) **television** / the **telly** (E),  
or **listens to** a **transmission on** the **radio**.

The radio **transmitter sends** (out) high or low frequent  
radio **signals** which are **detected** by the **radio receiver**.

The television transmitter **transmits** a TV signal which is  
**picked** ( ) `up by the **TV receiver / television set** / telly.

Today a satellite **receives** the signals which are then  
**emitted back to** the **antennae** ( / <nas) or **aerials** (E).

20 A receiver must be **compliant with** the transmitter.

A Premier League (E) club have **signed** a new **goalie**  
( **goalkeeper** ) **on** a three years **contract**.

A young **player** will make his first **appearance for** the  
**first team** also called the **first eleven** next **Saturday**.

He recently **signed with** a premier league club.

He **signed for** the club this **winter**.

So now he plays football **for** a **living** / his **livelihood**.

The club has completed the **signing** of new players  
**at the present time**.

30 When a player is **fouled**, the referee **whistles for** a **foul**.

His **whistle signals** a **foul**, and he **signals** a **penalty kick**.

Apparently it was a **penalty**, but the **replay** shows it's  
obviously a **free kick**.

Sometimes when the leading team is hard **pressed**,  
their supporters can't wait for the whistle to **signal** the end.

Having **made a successful debut in** E/A **debut on** the **team**,  
the player **signs** his **autograph for** a group of **fans**.

`dei / `debju~ dei / di`bju~

Some fans get a **signed photo of** the new **signing** (E).

The player **making** his **debut signs himself** ' Jimmy '.

\* i ...

\* kendingmelodi

\* transmittere ngt. live  
/ direkte

\* udsendelse ( i radio / TV )

\* speaker \* ( af-) slutte

\* farvel

\* ( af-) slutte ngt.

\* stykke musik

\* spille ...

\* musiker

\* uden noder

\* spille >

\* melodi

\* =

\* læse noder

\* være fortrolig med

\* nøgle-

\* taktfortegn

\* komponist

\* =

\* skrive under

\* signatur  
underskrift

\* se TV / fjernsyn

\* se / & følge

\* i / på TV

\* se ngt. i fjernsynet / fjerneren

\* lytte til ngt.

\* transmission

\* i radioen

\* sender

\* (ud-) sende >

\* signal

\* opfange

\* ... modtager

\* transmittere / udsende ngt.

\* opfange /  
modtage ngt.

\* modtager

\* fjernsyns- /  
tv-apparat

\* modtage ngt.

\* ( ud- ) sende ngt.

\* antenne

\* forenelig med ngt.

\* skrive kontrakt med ng.

\* målmand

\* =

\* kontrakt

\* spiller

\* optræden for ng.

\* første hold

\* lørdag

\* skrive / indgå kontrakt med bg.

\* =

\* vinter

\* som sin levevej / sit levebrød

\* kontraktsskrivning

\* på nuværende tidspunkt  
for nærværende

\* begået en uregel-  
menterethed imod

\* fløjte for >

\* uregel-  
menterethed

\* fløjte \* signalere /  
give tegn om >

\* =

\* - = - > \* straffe (-spark )

\* =

\* genvisning

\* frispark

\* være ( hårdt) presset

\* signalere / være tegn til ngt.

\* have ... debut

\* på holdet

\* skrive >

\* autograf

\* svoren tilhænger

\* signeret

\* foto af ng.

\* kontraktunderskriver

\* debuterende

\* underskrive sig

127 People involved in the <b>incredible</b> and <b>unbelievable</b> affair	* utrolig	* =
regularly <b>appear in</b> programmes <b>on</b> TV and <b>on the radio</b> .	* dukke op, vise sig ( ses / høres )	* i ... * i / på TV * i radioen
Happy that the economic <b>conditions</b> are <b>restored</b> ,	* forhold, omstændigheder	* genoprette ngt.
the townspeople are happy about the <b>current / prevailing / predominant / preponderant conditions</b> : the conditions	* nuværende	* herskende almindeligt forekommende
that <b>prevail</b> or <b>predominate</b> at the present time.	* dominerende	* fremherskende * <<
Some programmes have subtitles for <b>deaf</b> viewers	* herske, ~ være udbredt	* dominere
or viewers who are <b>hearing impaired / hard of hearing</b> .	* døve	
<b>Hearing disability</b> and <b>deafness</b> are <b>prevalent</b>	* hørehæmmet	
<b>10 among</b> older people / <b>in</b> older <b>age groups</b> .	* hørenedsættelse	* døvhed * udbredt
<b>Prevalence / predominance / preponderance</b> of hearing	* blandt ng. / i ngt.	* alders- * gruppe
disability <b>among</b> people <b>in</b> many older age groups	* udbredelse / dominans / overvægt af ngt.	
<b>creates / generates</b> a <b>demand for subtitled</b> programmes.	* skabe >	* behov for ngt. * teksten
Some people would <b>appreciate it if</b> films in a foreign	* værdsætte / sætte pris på det hvis -	
language are either <b>subtitled</b> or <b>dubbed into</b> English.	* undertekste ngt.	* eftersynkronisere ngt. til ngt.
<b>The deaf</b> and <b>the hard of hearing</b> who understand	* de døve	* de hørehæmmede
<b>sign language</b> have the <b>benefit</b> of the <b>use of signing</b> on TV.	* tegnsprog * fordel * brugen af >	* tegnsprog
The <b>signers</b> communicate important information to them.	* tegnsprogsudøvere	
They <b>sign</b> an <b>increasing</b> number of programmes.	* forsyne ngt. med tegnsprog	* voksende
<b>20</b> Parents learn to <b>sign</b> to <b>communicate with</b> a deaf child.	* bruge tegnsprog	* kommunikere med ng.
A producer wants to <b>follow</b> the book <b>up with</b> a film	* følge ngt. op med ngt.	
so a film based on the story <b>appears</b> later on.	* komme	
A famous actress <b>signs to</b> act <b>the heroine</b> in the movie	* skrive kontrakt om at -	* den kvindelige hovedrolle
so she <b>appears as</b> the enchantress in the film.	* optræde som ng. ( ses / høres )	
She has <b>appeared in</b> over ten movies often as a <b>heroine</b> .	* være med i ngt.	* heltinde
She spent a brief <b>spell on the stage</b> .	* periode	* ved teatret
The film is directed by a young director, a real <b>marvel / wonder</b> , and <b>assisted by</b> the accomplice.	* vidunder	
<b>Speaking of</b> the stranger <b>with awe</b> , the accomplice must	* =	* assisteret / bistået af ng.
<b>30</b> admit he <b>adored</b> the enchantress as long as it lasted.	* tale om / omtale ng.	* med ærefrygt
There's an <b>air of festivity</b> in the theatre at the premiere.	* tilbede / forgude ng.	
The stranger's name <b>appear</b> in the <b>credit</b> of the film.	* stemning af ngt.	* festlighed
It <b>runs for</b> almost two hours, and the <b>credits</b> are shown	* dukke op vise sig	* ophavsomtale navneopremsning
before or after a film.	* ~ vare i ngt.	* =
Some films have a pretty <b>obvious</b> ending.		
As a music company wants to <b>sign</b> the composer of	* indlysende forudsigelig	
the film music, he <b>signs with</b> the <b>quality</b> company.	* skrive / indgå kontrakt med ng.	
A question <b>remains</b> ; <b>what became of</b> the enchantress	* <<	* kvalitets-seriøst
who had spent a <b>marvellous / wonderful time</b> in the town.?	* ~ stå tilbage	* hvad blev der af ngt.
	* vidunderlig tid	

A <b>NOBLE FAMILY IS LOOKING TO MOVE</b> ( E & HOUSE )	* adelig	* være i gang med at -	* flytte
<b>128 Going on an outing, looking (a)`round the area,</b>	* tage på udflugt	* se sig omkring ( i et ) >	* område
a <b>lord</b> and his <b>lady</b> are <b>looking for</b> a new home.	* adelsmand	* -frue	* lede efter ngt.
<b>Looking (a)round,</b> they <b>look (a)round for</b> a <b>manor</b> .	* se sig om >	* se sig omkring efter ngt.	* gods
( They <b>look a`bout</b> (eE) the area / for a new home. )	* =		
' <b>Look,</b> there it is ! – that <b>looks like</b> the <b>way in,</b> '	* se, kig	* se ud til / som	* vejen ind
the husband suddenly says as he <b>pulls over</b> and <b>turns left</b> .	/ synes at være ngt		
	* køre / trække ind til siden	* dreje til >	* venstre
<b>Turning away from</b> the main road and <b>onto</b> a small <b>road,</b>	* dreje væk fra ngt.	* ... ind på >	* vej
he goes on ' <b>It looks to</b> me <b>like</b> the <b>entrance to</b> the <b>manor</b> –	* se ud for ng. som ngt.	* indgang til ngt.	* gods
if you <b>look</b> carefully you can just <b>see</b> the <b>mansion</b> from here.'	forekomme ng. at være ngt.	/ -bygning	
<b>10 Surrounded by</b> a <b>bleak landscape,</b> the <b>manor ( house )</b>	* kigge	* se ngt.	* palæ
has a <b>gloomy</b> and <b>`sinister look</b> .			fornem bolig
	* omgive /	* dyster, trist	* landskab
	/ -kranse ngt.	trøstesløs	* godsbygning
	* skummel	* dyster, ildevarslende	* udseende
		uhyggelig, uheldssvangrer	
	* ejer af ( virksomhed / ejendom )		
As they meet with the <b>proprietor</b> of the manor,			
the wife <b>takes a ( quick ) look at</b> the <b>owner</b> .	* kaste et ( hurtigt ) blik på ng.		* ejer
Having just <b>casts / thrown / had a ( brief ) look at</b> him,	* ... ( kort ) ...		
she feels <b>there is something gloomy about</b> him,	* der er noget		* dysters / trist /
and something <b>sinister about</b> his <b>manner(s)</b> .			håbløst over ng.
<b>Looking gloomy / glum,</b> the <b>lord of the manor</b>	* skummel / ildevarslende /		* væremåde, væsen
<b>has a stern</b> and <b>gloomy / glum look on</b> his <b>face / in</b> his <b>eyes,</b>	uheldssvangert over ngt.	( pl. manerer, opførsel )	
<b>and a look of bitterness on</b> his <b>face / in</b> his <b>eyes.</b>	* se ( skummel ) ud	* herre ( af ) >	* gods
<b>20 The visiting lady</b> doesn't like the proprietor's <b>manner</b> .		~ herremand, godsejer	
	* have et >	* streng	* trist
		barsk	* udtryk i ansigtet
	* udtryk / mine >		ulykkelig / øjnene
		* bitterhed	* i ansigtet / øjnene
	* besøgende		* væremåde, væsen
He has a <b>stiff manner</b> and <b>akward manners</b>			
	* stiv	* væremåde, væsen	* kejtet
He <b>looks as if / as though</b> he <b>hates / hated company</b> .	uvenlig		* manerer
	* se ud som om	* hade ngt.	opførsel
<b>Looking like</b> he <b>hates / hated { having / to have company,</b>	* =		* selskab
his <b>ackward</b> and <b>stiff manner(s),</b> his <b>deep-set</b> dark eyes,			
and his black <b>cloak give</b> him a <b>look of</b> the <b>devil</b> .	* kejtet	* stiv	* væremåde
	tvungen	uvenlig	* dybtliggende ( øjne )
	* kappe	* få ng. til at se ud som >	* djævel
He's a Dracula <b>`lookalike</b> - a <b>handsome</b> man			
<b>in his own gloomy, sinister sort of way.</b>	* dobbeltgænger		* nydelig
			køn
	* på sin egen >	* trist	* ildevarslende
			* slags
			* måde
			facon
Having drawn her husband aside to <b>get out of earshot of</b>	* komme ud af ngs. hørevidde		
the owner, the wife <b>whispers,</b> ' I <b>don't like the look of</b> it –	* hviske	* & der er noget ved det ng. ikke kan lide	
<b>30 I</b> neither like <b>the ( gloomy / sinister ) look of</b> the proprietor	* ngs.	( dyster, trist / skummel, )	* udseende
nor <b>the ( gloomy / sinister ) look of</b> the mansion.'		håbløs	ildevarslende
	* ngts. ...		* fremtoning
The husband <b>looks for</b> an <b>excuse to</b> get away.			
	* lede efter		* undskyldning for at -
A door in a <b>bleakly lit corridor looks ( like )</b> a <b>way out</b> .	* trist	* oplyst	* korridor
			* se ud til at være
As the door <b>looks to</b> him ( <b>like</b> ) the way out,			* vej ud
			udgang
he <b>says good-bye to</b> the <b>devilish-looking</b> proprietor.	* & forekomme ng. at være		
	* sige farvel til ng.	* djævelsk	* -udseende
' <b>Look,</b> I'm sorry but the bank won't <b>lend</b> me that much	* ~ hør her		* ( ud- ) låne ng. ngt.
<b>on my looks,</b> ' the husband says <b>bleakly, looking innocent</b> .	* på éns glatte ansigt	* trist	* se uskyldig ud
	( udseende )	( med en uskyldig mine )	
<b>What does it matter if</b> he's telling a <b>white lie</b> .	* hvad betyder det hvis -		* hvid løgn

<b>129</b> ' It looks as if / as though we can't afford the place - ( eA: It looks like we can't afford it ) the husband says, ' It looks to me as if / as though we can't afford to buy it. ' ' Look at the time ! We're going to be late,' he goes on with a look as if / as though they were in a hurry, and as if / as though to express ( that ) they are sorry. As they will not even look at the owner's proposals, he gives / shoots them a black look / an angry glance. His sinister manner shows his disapproval.	* se ud til / som om ng&t. + sætn. * have råd til ng. * = * forekomme én * & passe på ( tiden ) * med et udtryk som om at - * have travlt ( konjunktiv ) * som om at - * se på / tage ng. i betragtning * forslag * sende ng. et vredt blik * skummel * måde at være på * vise ng. opførsel, optræden * se på ng. med knive i øjnene * udstråle / give indtryk af ngt. * utilfredshed ( over ng&t. ) ( & se utilfreds ud ) * betragte ng. med ( vrede skabt af dem ) * se på ng. i / med forbløffelse // i ... * se ng. i ansigtet * give / sende ng. * gennemborende * gennemtrængende * koldt * blik ~ uvenligt * stirre / glo > * - = - * på ng. * glo vredt på ng. * med / af foragt * holde ng. * & kontrollere * tæmme / tøjle ng. * = tilbage lægge en dæmper på ngt. * ... sig ( selv ) * vise / udsrøbe ngt. * ... sig ( selv ) * se ... ud ( tvinge sig fra at ( gøre ) ng. ) * se ud som / ligne ngt. * se ud som om ng&t. * ville > * eksplodere ( med efterfølgende sætn. & evt. konjunktiv. ) * = * temperament * sprængfarlig * se ud ( for ng. ) som om at - ( ng&t. vil noget ) * = * ikke så meget som * kikke på ng. * undgå > * stirrende blik * langt ... * & vredt ... stirren * dyster * atmosfære * tynge / trykke / knue ng. stemning * kigge men ikke lægge mærke til noget * lægge ng. bag sig * dysterhed * ligne sig selv igen * fanden hytter sine * så ud til at skulle blive ng. * fin dag * se ud til regn * se ud til ngt. * som det ser ud * se ud til / synes > * som om at - * rummelig * stationcar * nummerplade * rummelig * registreringsnummer * forkortet til ngt.
<b>10</b> Looking `daggers at the visitors, he really looks his dissatisfaction ( at / with them and the whole situation ). 'dis'satis`fak\$ While the proprietor `looks (up)on them with anger, they look ( back ) at him in / with surprise // in amazement. Looking them in the faces, he gives / shoots them a severe, hard, angry, piercing, and penetrating frosty look. While he stares / gazes wildly, fiercely, and frostily at them, they glare at him with / in contempt. Unable to hold ( ) back, check, curb or restrain his temper, unable to check himself, the proprietor looks his despair. <b>20</b> Unable to restrain himself ( from anger / looking angry ) the proprietor yet more looks ( like ) a devil. He looks as if he was / were (a bomb) ( about to explode). He looks as though his temper was / were explosive. As he looks ( to them ) as if / as though he is // eA like he is going to explode, the wife does not so much as look at him any more while her husband makes no attempt to avoid the owner's gaze / stare / glare even if / even though the gloomy / sinister atmosphere oppresses him too. On their way out, they look but see nothing. <b>30</b> Having left the gloominess behind them, they begin to look like themselves again. ' The devil looks after his own, ' the father says, ' It looked ( like ) a fine day, now it looks ( to me ) like rain.' So as it seems like rain by the look of it, it looks / seems { as if / as though ( / like ) it's going to rain. The family drives a roomy estate car E/A a station wagon. Number plates E/A licence plates on the front and back of the spacious car show its registration number. Great Britain is abbreviated / shortened to GB. ébri-vieitid	

**130** The next morning the wife says, ' **Look whether**

the **postman** E/A **mailman** has come yet. ' **Look whether**

' **I'll look and see**, ' the husband answers.

As they **open** and **read** their **post** E/A **mail**,

they realize that one of the letters is about a manor for sale.

They call the **seller** who says, ' **Come and have a look**'

as he wants his estate to **sell for** / **fetch** a good price.

The **outlook** for the next day is fine as the **weather report**

says, ' **In further outlook**, little general change for a few days.'

**10** So in order to **take** / **get** / **have a look** ( **at** the manor ),

and **know about** the **geography of** the building,

they **set out** to **look** ( **a** ) **round** / **about** the manor.

The **lady of** the **house looks** ( **to** them ) **like** a **lady**.

The **lady of** the **manor looks** ( **to** them ) a real lady.

The **elderly** lady has been a **widow** ( **for** ) a **long time**,

but **looks** happy, and seems **mild-mannered**.

**Having manner**, she **behaves in a lady-like manner**.

Having **manners**, the lady has **noble graceful manners**.

**Taking a look at** the **good-looking** lady, they **notice**

( that she **has** ) a **look of** pleasure on her **noble fragile face**,

**20** ( and **has** ) a mild but **proud** and **firm look** in her **eyes**.

Most people who are nearly **70 look it**.

She doesn't **look it**, though; she doesn't **look** her **age**.

She **looks like** an elderly woman but doesn't **look** **70**.

**To look at** her, **looking good, well** and **fit**, having

a **pleasing appearance**, you'd never think she was nearly **70**.

Although she is beginning to **lose** her **looks** in **later life**,

she is proud of her **looks**, and **looks** her **thanks**.

Suddenly the lady of the manor **looks pensive**,

**30** having a **thoughtful look** / **expression** in her **eyes**.

Having a **pensive look** / **expression** on her **face**,

she says, ' When I **look back** – **look back to** my youth –

I can **look back on** a youth of **dramatic** social change

when my life **altered dramatically**.'

`å~ltéd

Looking back **with affection**, she underlines **pensively** /

**thoughtfully** that children **need** lots of love and **affection**.

While my mother didn't **show** me much **affection**,

my **devoted** father **held** me in deep **affection**.

He has always **had** a special **place** in my **affections**.

\* se om -

\* se / kigge efter om -

\* postbud

\* se efter

\* åbne >

\* læse >

\* post

\*

\* sælger

\* kom og kig

\* blive solgt for / indbringe >

\* ( god ) pris

\* udsigt for ngt.

\* vejrudsigt

\* videre udsigt

\* tage få have et kig ( på ngt. )

\* vide ( noget ) om ngt.

\* ~ indretning af ngt.

\* begive sig af sted \* se sig omkring i / på ( et sted )

\* husets frue \* se ( for ng. ) ud som ngt. \* rigtig dame  
( ~ forekomme én at være ngt. )

\* godsejerfrue

\* se ( for ng. ) ud som ngt.

~ forekomme én at være ngt.

\* ældre

\* enke

\* i lang tid

\* se ( lykkelig ) ud

\* mild i sin opførsel

/ af væsen

\* have stil \* opføre sig \* på en udsøgt kvindelig måde

\* ( ordentlige ) manerer \* fin \* yndefuld \* =  
ordentlig optræden, -førsel fornem

\* kaste et blik på ngt.

\* ~køn

\* bemærke >

\* ( at ng. har ) \* udtryk af \* i sit nydelige spinkle ansigt  
( glæde )

\* ( har )

\* stolt

\* fast

\* udtryk ( i øjnene )

\* se ud til det

\* =

\* se ud som / ligne én i den alder

\* se ud som

\* ældre

\* =

\* & af udseende

\* se godt ud

\* sund

\* i form

og rask

\* tiltalende

\* fremtoning

\* miste sit gode udseende

\* på det seneste i livet

\* udseende

\* se taknemmelig ud

\* se tænksom ud ( pga. ngt. trist / bekymrende )

\* tænksomt blik / udtryk i øjnene

\* ... udtryk i ansigtet

\* se tilbage

\* ... til ngt.

\* se tilbage på ngt.

\* dramatisk ( forandring )

\* forandre sig

\* dramatisk

\* med hengivenhed / ømhed / kærlighed

\* tankefuldt

tænksomt

\* =

\* have brug for / behøve ngt.

\* =

\* vise ng. >

\* hengivenhed, ømhed, kærlighed

\* hengiven ( far )

\* nære ( dyb ) ... for ng.

\* have en ( særlig ) plads i > \* ( ngs. ) kærlige følelser

131 ' When I was young and <b>looked for</b> a job,	* lede / søge efter ngt.
I was a real <b>looker</b> - a <b>good looker</b> , ' the lady <b>tells</b> them.	* godt udseende person * = * fortælle ng.
' <b>Going a`bout</b> finding a job, I <b>looked around for</b> a job. '	* gå i gang med at - * lede rundt omkring efter ngt.
' <b>Looking to</b> find a job, and having <b>looked`out for</b> any job,	* ~ prøve at - * være på udkig / lede efter ngt.
I was finally <b>engaged as</b> a <b>nanny</b> , ' she says and goes on,	* ansætte ng. som ngt. * barnepige
' A lord and a lady <b>engaged me to look`after</b> their children,	* ansætte ng. til at- * holde øje med / passe ng.
until they were old enough to <b>look`after themselves</b> . '	* passe på / tage vare på sig selv
<b>Bratty</b> kids and <b>spoiled / spoilt brats</b> are a <b>nuisance</b>	* uvorn * forkælet * møgunge * plage uvorn person
so I was told not to <b>spoil / overindulge</b> those kids of theirs.	* forkæle ng.
<b>10</b> The lady <b>was in good looks</b> , and beautiful <b>to look at</b>	* have et godt udseende * se på
but all the same the lord had noticed that I <b>had looks</b> too.	* & se godt ud
<b>To look at</b> me you'd think I was <b>Italian</b> .	* af udseende * italiener
The <b>lady</b> of the <b>manor died</b> , however.	* godsejerfrue * død
Even if he was able to <b>look`after</b> his own interests,	* passe på / tage vare på ngt.
and able to <b>look`out for</b> himself, the lord needed	* tage vare på ( sig selv )
a <b>well-mannered</b> partner to <b>look`out for</b> him.	* velopdragen * ... ng.
Quite often a <b>look passed between</b> us.	* udveksle et blik
When he noticed a <b>look of love in</b> my <b>eyes</b> ,	* forelsket udtryk * i éns øjne
a <b>look of</b> surprise appeared <b>on</b> his good-looking <b>face</b> .	* udtryk af ngt. * i éns ansigt
<b>20</b> <b>Looks can be deceptive</b> , though.	* blik / udseende kan bedrage ( * være bedragerisk )
Before he <b>proposed</b> , I didn't dare <b>look for</b> such a result.	* fri * håbe på / forvente / regne med ngt.
<b>Raising</b> a <b>questioning eyebrow</b> , trying to <b>discourage</b> me,	* hæve > * spørgende * øjenbryn * tage modet fra ng. tvivlende
my mother had asked me, ' What are you <b>looking for</b> in life ? '	* & søge
and gone on <b>questioningly</b> , ' Are you <b>looking for trouble</b> ? '	* spørgende * være ude på > * ballade tvivlende besvær
' <b>Look before you leap</b> – you should <b>look for</b> stability –	* se dig for før du springer ud i noget * søge efter ngt.
if you marry him you are <b>looking for</b> trouble so <b>look`out for</b>	* kunne forvente ngt
<b>troublemakers</b> ! ' she had finally warned me.	* passe på / * ballademager være på vagt overfor ngt. urostifter
I had, however, <b>no misgiving(s) / qualms about</b>	* have skrupler over ngt.
( accepting ) his proposal so the lord <b>had</b> my <b>acceptance</b>	* få > * godtagelse, ja
<b>30</b> so <b>anxiously looked for</b> as he told me.	* bekymret * håbe på ngt.
<b>Looking`forward to</b> getting / being <b>married ( to the lord )</b>	* se frem / glæde sig til at -
I <b>looked forward to</b> my <b>wedding / marriage</b> .	* ... til ngt. * bryllup / & ægteskab
<b>No amount</b> of <b>discouragement</b> could keep me from that.	* ~ ikke nok så megen * tagen modet fra ng.
Marrying a lord I could hardly have <b>looked</b> higher.	* sigte ( højere )
As his <b>lawfully wedded wife</b> , I still had to <b>look a`head</b> .	* se / tænke fremad være forudseende
I had to <b>look ahead to</b> a new life and trouble,	* være forberedt på / regne med ngt.
as there was a <b>sinister side to</b> my first years of marriage.	* skummel * side af ngt. ildevarslende, uheldssvanger
I <b>granted</b> ( my enemies ) ( <b>that</b> ) <b>fortune</b> had <b>smiled on</b> me,	* tilstå ( overfor ng. ) at - * lykken > * tilsmile ng
but was accused of <b>looking`after / out for number one</b>	* ~ se efter sin egen fordel mele sin egen kage

132 My **marriage with** the lord made the **marriageable**

noble ladies **look** such **fools**; each of them **looked a fool**.

**Looking `down on** common people and **manual labour**,

these ladies, not surprisingly, used to **feel superior ( to me )**.

**`Looking (up)on** me **as** (a) **subordinate** and (an) **inferior**,  
they **looked `down on** me **for** being just a nanny.

Whenever they had **condescended to** talk to me

they never **wasted a opportunity** to **condescend to** me.

As they **looked (up)on** me **with contempt / disdain**,

**10** they used to look at me **with a condescending /**  
**contemptuous / disdainful / dismissive look.**

It was **not unusual for** the **aristocracy** to look (up)on  
the commoners **with disguised condescension**.

There was, however, **nothing unusual in** my **manner**.

as I neither **looked `up to** them nor **felt inferior ( to them )**.

I never had a **feeling / sense** of **moral inferiority**.

So there **were** evil **looks from** these ladies as they had  
expected to be **looked (up)on / regarded as superior(s)**

Now they **looked at** me **with ill-concealed envy**.

**20** If **looks could kill ( , I would be dead now )**.

My marriage with the lord **made** them **look `silly**.

When we **happened to look the other way**,  
they **condescendingly looked us up and `down**.

They **`looked after** us as we walked down the street  
but used to **look the other way without bothering / troubling**  
to greet us when we **passed by**.

' Don't **look** now, but they are **staring and glaring at** us,'

I would **point out, pointing out** their **ill-advised manners**.

These **graceless, rough-** and **ill-mannered** ladies **had**

**30 bad manners** as they could behave **in** such (a) **fashion**.

It's **bad manners** to **stare at** people; it **doesn't look good**.

**It looks bad** staring at people - **manners, please !**

Probably **jealous** and **envious**, these **rude** ladies,  
**sick with jealousy** and **envy**, always behaved **in this manner**  
as if / as though they knew of **no other ways**.

**Where were** their **manners ?** – They **had no manners**.

Why didn't they **have good manners** ?

**What manner of** people were they being so **rude to** me ?

They ought to **learn / be taught** some **manners**.

\* ægteskab med ng. \* giftefærdig, -moden

\* se dum ud \* =  
være til grin  
\* se ned på ng. \* ... ngt.

\* føle sig overlegen ( overfor ng. )

\* anse / \* undergiven \* mindreværdig  
betragte ng. som ngt. ( ... person )  
\* se ned på ng. for at -

\* nedlade sig til at -

\* forspilde en mulighed \* være nedladende overfor ng.  
til at -  
\* betragte ng. med > \* foragt

\* med > \* nedladende

\* foragtende \* blik

\* ikke usædvanligt for ng. at - \* aristokratiet  
græsk: de bedste  
\* med > \* utilsløret \* nedladdenhed

\* & intet usædvanligt / særligt at bemærke på én

\* se up til \* føle sig mindreværdig ( \* overfor /  
/ underlegen i forhold til ng. )  
\* følelse af > \* morask \* mindreværd

\* blik

\* se på / betragte som ngt.

\* se på ng. med \* slet skjult \* misundelse

\* hvis blikke kunne dræbe ( ville ng. være døde nu )

\* gøre ng. til grin

\* ~ tilfældigvis \* se den anden vej

\* nedladende \* kigge / se op og ned af ng.  
overbeglo ng.

\* se efter ng.  
følge ng. med øjnene  
\* se den anden vej \* uden at bekymre / besvære sig  
& lade som om, man ikke ser noget med at -  
\* komme ( gående etc. ) forbi

\* kigge \* stirre \* glo vredt på ngt.

\* gøre opmærksom på \* ubetænksom \* manerer

\* dårligt ... / uopdragen \* = \* =  
uforskammet, ukultiveret  
\* have dårlige manerer \* på sådan vis  
( på sådan en måde )

\* dårlig opførsel \* ikke se godt ud  
/ være god tone  
\* = \* ~ opfør jer ordentligt

\* jaloux \* misundelig \* uforskammet  
misundelig uhøflig  
\* syg af > \* jalousi \* misundelse \* maner  
misundelse måde

\* måde

\* & hvordan er det, \* ikke have nogen manerer  
ng. opfører sig / pli

\* have gode manerer  
opføre sig ordentligt

\* hvilken slags \* uforskammet overfor ng.

\* lære / få lært \* ~ gode manerer  
~ at opføre sig ordentligt



133 As they've got no consideration for commoners,

I looked (up) on these lady's behaviour with contempt.

I looked (up) on their behaviour as a sign of inferiority.

Although most aristocrats were arrogant in outlook,  
the lord's general outlook was compassionate.

Although he had a pitying outlook on life,  
the lord simply looked on and did nothing  
while these ladies gracelessly looked down on me.

Still feeling / having a touch of a deep-rooted sense of

10 social inferiority, I asked my husband how he could look  
on while they looked down their noses at me and my work

'You don't need to have a feeling / sense of inferiority,'  
he explained with a confident look in his eyes.'

Having explained that, in the long run, it would leave me  
in a better position without his intervention, he went on  
'You just keep that mild but proud and firm look in your eyes  
when you ask them, 'What's the matter with you? –  
aren't you forgetting your manners? –  
why don't you look to your affairs and stay out of mine?'

20 'Then, if you leave it to look after itself, the ladies shall  
soon come to heel all by themselves,' he concluded.

From then on, looking the danger in the face, I made sure  
(that) I got a good look at them, as I looked for results.

Having seen through the envious ladies and their manners,  
I usually looked straight / right through them.

I never faced a similar challenge (with) in my memory  
so as one of them looked at me with condescension, being  
rude about me and my origin(s), I just looked her in the face.

Having caught her eye, I managed to look her down  
30 by looking her straight in the eye(s).

'You're not looking your self today,' I said and went on,  
'If you can't look out for yourself, that's your own lookout,'  
and added, 'If your husband doesn't look out for you,  
that is his lookout so no matter how you look at it,  
you should look nearer home instead of looking elsewhere.'

Even if she was a woman with much pretence to beauty,  
but actually not much to look at, I was above making fun of  
her pretensions (well, there's no accounting for taste)  
by not letting her aberrant behaviour provoke me any further.

\* ikke have nogen medfølelse for ng.

\* se på / betragte ng. med

\* foragt

\* ... ng. som

\* mindreværd  
underlegenhed

\* aristokrat (de bedste)  
\* arrogant

\* i ens livssyn  
/ indstilling  
\* medlidende

\* almindelig indstilling

\* medlidende

\* livssyn  
indstilling til livet  
\* se på

\* blot

\* uopdragent, taktløst

\* se ned på ng.

\* føle / have \* snert af ng. \* rodfæstet \* følelse af ng.

\* mindreværd (= mindreværdsfølelse)  
\* på

\* se >

\* se ned på /  
rynke på næsen af ng. / ng.

\* have en følelse af mindreværd  
(mindreværdsfølelse)

\* forklare

\* ... tillidsfuldt udtryk ...

\* ... at -

\* stille i en gunstigere position

\* indgriben

\* udtryk i øjnene

\* hvad er der galt

\* glemme >

\* (gode) manerer

\* passe ens egne sager og blande sig udenom andres

\* lade det passe sig selv  
/ gå sin skæve gang  
\* ~ falde til patten (hæl)

\* se faren i øjnene

\* sikre sig >

\* at - \* få set godt på ng.

\* kigge / se efter ng.

\* gennemskue ng.

\* se lige igennem ng.

\* lignende \* udfordring \* så langt ngs. hukommelse >  
rækker (såvidt ng. husker)  
\* kigge på ng. \* nedlæthed

\* uforkammet  
omkring ng&t.  
\* oprindelse  
herkomst  
\* fange ngs. blik

\* se ng. i ansigtet

\* kue med et blik

\* se ng. lige i øjnene

\* se veltilpas / rask ud

\* sørge for ng,

\* det er ens eget ansvar  
/ egen sag

\* =

\* =

\* være ngs. sag

\* se på / betragte ng.

\* gribe i egen barm

\* lede efter ng. / ng. andet

\* fordring på (at være) ng.

\* faktisk \* ~ ikke særlig køn \* ~ holde sig for god til at -

\* præntioner  
~ falske forestillinger

\* ~ smag og behag er forskellig

\* afvigende ~ uacceptabel

\* provokere ng.

<b>134</b> After some <b>time</b> / some <b>time</b> later, one <b>questioning</b> <b>look</b>	* ( efter nogen, ~ et stykke ) tid / ( nogen, ~ et stykke ) tid ( senere )	* spørgende / skeptisk blik
at the <b>eye(s)</b> of these ladies, and they <b>looked away</b> .	* ( lige ) i > * ~ synet på ng.	* se bort / væk fjerne blikket
Even so, I was able to <b>make</b> them <b>look small</b> .	* få ng. til at blive den lille	
When a person <b>looked away from</b> me,	* ... fra	
I just <b>ignored</b> their presence, and <b>left</b> them <b>out of account</b> .	* se bort fra ng.	* =
' Today I can <b>look back on</b> many years of happy marriage,'	* se tilbage på ng.	
she says before she suddenly concludes,' Oh, I'm sorry ! –	*	
I talk so much that you couldn't <b>get / have</b> a <b>look-in</b> .' (E)	* komme til ( orde etc. )	
' It's time to <b>look (a)`round</b> the house so <b>have</b> a <b>look</b> ,'	* kigge / se sig om, -kring * ~ ta' nu og kig	
<b>10</b> the lady says <b>invitingly</b> , having <b>told</b> her <b>life story</b> .	* inviterende * fortælle > * livshistorie	
<b>The first time</b> the <b>possible buyers take</b> a <b>look (a)round</b> ,	* første gang * mulig * køber * tage sig et kig omkring	
and <b>have</b> a <b>look at</b> the house <b>outside</b> and <b>inside</b> , they only	* få et kik på ng.	* ~ udenfor * ~ indenfor
have time to <b>take / have / get</b> a <b>brief look at</b> a few rooms.	* take / få et kort kik på ng.	
The <b>potentiel</b> buyers <b>consider</b> things <b>with</b> an expert <b>eye</b> .	* potentiel * køber * betragte ng.	* med ... øjne
Having <b>looked at</b> the gardens <b>from</b> ( the ) <b>outside</b> ,	* kikke på ng.	* ~ udefra
they <b>look `about</b> the gardens <b>having</b> a <b>quick look</b> .	* kikke sig omkring i ng.	* få et hurtigt kik
' <b>Look where</b> you go – the lady warns,'	* se / pas på hvxx -	
<b>look (well)</b> (a)`round / <b>about</b> (you) ! –	* se sig omkring	
there may be <b>boggy / marshy / swampy</b> ground.'	* sumpet	
<b>20</b> They see a dog <b>going loose</b> but it doesn't <b>look like biting</b> .	* gå løs * se ud til at - * bide	
The <b>noble</b> and <b>stately</b> mansion was <b>good to look at</b>	* fornem * ~ se ( godt ) ud	
but the gardens were <b>not much to look at from</b> ( the ) <b>inside</b> .	* ikke se ud af meget * ~ indefra	
<b>To look at</b> the garden it was <b>bleak</b> , and the <b>assembly of</b>	* ~ af udseende * dyster, trist * samling af ng.	
<b>machinery overdue for service</b> was <b>bad to look at</b> .	* maskineri * for længst * eftersyn * slem at se på (= maskinpark ) moden til >	
Before they decide whether to buy the manor,	*	
they must <b>look ( well ) (a)`round / about</b> (them).	* se sig om til alle sider & se sig for, passe på tage alt i betragtning se hvordan landet ligger	
As they only <b>had</b> a <b>brief / fleeting / quick glimpse of</b>	* få kort / flygtigt / hurtigt glimt af ng.	
many things, they return the next day to <b>take / have / get</b>	* få >	
a <b>close(r) look at</b> the mansion and a <b>fresh look of</b> the garden.	* kik tæt ( -ere ) på ng.	
<b>30</b> <b>Looking</b> carefully / closely ( <b>at</b> everything ),	* se / kikke ( grundigt / tæt på ) ( ng.)	
they <b>look ( ) `over</b> the <b>gracious</b> manor house once again.	* kigge / se overalt i * overdådigt se nøjere / del for del på ng.	
They <b>look into</b> every room.	* kigge / se ind i ng.	
When they <b>look in</b> a room, they <b>look about / around</b> it.	* kigge / se ( inde ) i ng.	* ... sig omkring i ng.
<b>Looking up</b> and <b>down</b> all the time,	* se op / ned	
they <b>look up at</b> the ceiling and <b>down at</b> the floor,	* kigge / se op på * ... ned ...	
and step closer to <b>get</b> a <b>good look at</b> some installations	* få et godt kik på ng.	
they <b>come `across</b> .	* støde tilfældigt på ng. møde ng. tilfældigt	
It <b>matters</b> ( <b>to</b> everybody ) <b>how</b> they are <b>greeted</b> ,	* betyde noget ( for ng. ) hvordan - * ( blive ) hilst på	
so people <b>brightly say hello to</b> everybody they <b>come across</b> .	* muntert * sige hallo til ng. * ... ng.	

**135** The lady of the manor needs help with some documents \*

so they **look** `in the next day.

One afternoon they **look in on** the lady just for a chat.

**After** due / proper / serious **consideration**, they **look in**

one evening to tell the lady ( about ) their **provisional** decision. \*

The **implications** of a **move** / E& **removal** must be

**looked at** so the family `look to their lawyer for help.

They **look to** him to `look ( ) through the calculations.

The lord **looks papers** `out for the lawyer to `look at.

**10** **Expecting** the lawyer to prepare a **considered response**

to the problem, the lord **looks out** the documents

Having **looked out** the papers for a careful examination

the lord, together with the lawyer, **look** `into the problem,

and **look at** the question from all **sides**.

They **take a good look at** the figures,

and **take a close look at** the contracts.

They must **look out for miscalculations**

and **arith`metic**(**<al** ) **errors in** `calculating the economic prospects.

**20** So they take care not to **miscalculate**;

not to **miscalculate what** changes the future might bring,

not to **miscalculate** the **risks** involved in the project

not to **miscalculate** the effect of the **interest burden**,

and **miscalculate** the figures of the future **finances**.

Even if they have the **stamp of approval** of the authorities,

they must **look out for** judicial **pitfalls**,

and **avoid** economic **pitfalls**.

**All manner of** things have to be **looked** `after

not to **miscalculate how** the business must be run.

**30** The `forward-looking lawyer **looks after** the lord's affairs;

he is **responsible for** and **takes care of** his interests,

his finances, and rights **in all manner of ways**.

An `estate agent E/A a `real estate agent or `Realtor

buys and sells buildings and land (A = **realty** ) for others.

An **assessor** E/A **real-estate appraiser** **assesses value(s)**.

As much land is **converted into housing estates**

or to **industrial estates**, some people **get rich in this fashion**.

**Making a pile after this manner**, and **making** their **pile**

**in this manner**, these people **get prosperous in this way**.

\* kigge ind  
komme på besøg

\* kigge ind /  
komme på besøg hos

\* efter ( passende / = / alvorlig ) overvejelse \* kikke ind

\* foreløbig

\* følge af >

\* flytning

\* & studere /  
undersøge ngt.

\* sætte sin lid til /  
stole på ngt. for ngt.

\* ... til at - \* se ngt. løseligt igennem \* beregning  
løbe ngt. igennem

\* finde ngt. frem til ngt. \* papirer \* kigge på /  
dokumenter undersøge ngt.

\* forvente at ngt. > \* forberede ngt. \* velovervejet \* svar

\* finde ngt. frem

\* ... til ngt.

\* undersøge ngt. nærmere

\* undersøge ngt.

\* fra alle sider  
& på kryds og tværs

\* tage et grundigt kig på ngt.  
undersøge ngt. nøje

\* =

\* passe på at undgå >

\* fejlregning

\* regnefejl

\* i udregningen / bedømmelsen af ngt.

\*

\* fejlregne / -bedømme

\* ... hvad etc.

\* ... ngt.

\* risiko

\* =

\* rentebyrde

\* =

\* finanser

\* stempel

\* billigelse

~ ngs. blå stempel

\* passe på overfor >

\* faldgrube

\* undgå >

\* =

\* alle slags / mulige

\* holde øje med /  
passe / tage vare på ngt.

\* fejlregne / -bedømme hvxx

\* fremadskuende

\* =

\* ansvarlig for ngt.

\* tage vare på /  
passe ngt.

\* på alle mulige måder

\* ejendomsmægler

\* ( ejendomme )

\* vurderingsmand

\* vurdere >

\* værdi (-er )

\* omdanne til >

\* beboelses-  
bolig-

\* kompleks  
område

\* industri- \* = \* blive > \* rig \* på > \* denne facon /  
måde

\* skabe en bunke  
~ formue

\* på den måde

\* ... deres ...

\* =

\* blive > \* velhavende / rig

\* =

**136** The lord has **employed** a **first-rate lawyer**

as a financial **adviser** / < **so** to the lord **on** business matters.

He has **employed** the lawyer **to give** legal **advice**.

**Acting** in an **advisory role** / **capacity**, he is **first-rate**.

**Giving advice** to the lord, he **gives** the lord **good advice**.

He often **gives** the lord **a piece of** / **a word of advice**.

The lord is always ready to **take advice** (U),  
and as the lawyer never **miscalculates** the lord's intentions,  
the lord always **takes** his lawyer's **advice**.

**10** Having **taken a piece of good advice** from his lawyer,  
the lord usually **follows** his lawyer's **advice**.

The lawyer **gives advice on economic** questions,  
and **gives advice to** people with **financial** problems.

**Giving** the lord **advice about economical purchases**,  
he **gives** the lord ( good ) **advice about** buying the **estate**.

**At one time** the lord **advised with** his father.

The father used to **advise** his son ( **on** economy ).

' **Let me give you a piece of good advice**, ' the father said,  
' **Relying upon** one's own **capacity** is **inadvisable**.'

**20** You would be well ( - ) **advised to consider**.

You would be **ill-advised** not to consider a matter.

' **A word of advice - relying on** your own **ability**  
is an **inadvisable economic** disposition.

' So **take my advice** - it would be **inadvisable** not to  
consult a lawyer.'

' Consulting a lawyer would be **advisable**, ' he **advised** him.

' **It would be advisable to** consult a lawyer, ' he **advised**,  
' So to consult a lawyer would be an **advisable** disposition.'

The lord is an **advisable** son.

**30** His brother, however, is quite **inadvisable**  
so the father **advised** ( the lord ) not to act like his brother.

**Discouraged from** acting like his brother,  
the lord **advisably** answered, ' I shall **act as you advise**.'

The lord is **well advised** not to act as his brother.

Others has been **ill advised to** act like his brother; even if  
he **has an arrangement with** his lawyer **to take advice**,  
he is known as the most **inadvisable** member of the family  
**in recent memory** if not the least advisable family member  
**in ( living ) memory**.

\* ansætte > \* førsteklases \* jurist  
sagfører  
\* som > \* rådgiver / vejleder for ng. \* om ngt.  
\* ansætte ng. til at - \* give / \* ( juridisk ) vejledning /  
yde > rådgivning  
\* optræde i > \* rådgivende \* rolle / = \* første klases  
vejledende funktion ~ en kapacitet  
\* give / \* vejledning / \* give / \* god ...  
yde > rådgivning til ng. yde ng. >  
\* ... ng. > \* ~ et råd  
\* få / indhente / lytte til > \* rådgivning / vejledning  
\* fejlbedømme ngt.  
\* << ngs. <<  
\* få etc. > \* ~ et godt råd fra ng.  
\* følge > \* ngs. råd / vejledning  
\* give vejledning / \* økonomisk, pengemæssig  
råd om ngt. ( for større sammenhænge )  
\* ... til ng. \* = ( ... mindre ... )  
\* give ng. råd / \* økonomisk fornuftig \* anskaffelse  
vejledning om ngt. indkøb, køb  
\* ... om at - \* ejendom ( land + bygninger )  
\* i sin tid \* rådføre sig med ng.  
\* råde / rådgive ng. ( om ngt. )  
\* lad mig give dig > \* et godt råd  
\* stole på / \* evner  
sætte sin lid til ngt. formåen  
\* du / man gør klogt i at - \* overveje  
tænke sig om  
\* ... u- ...  
\* et ( godt ) råd \* =  
\* utilrådelig \*  
\* lyt til ngs. råd \* <  
\*  
\* tilrådeligt \* råde ng.  
\* u- \* =  
\* tilrådelig  
\* modtagelig for råd  
\* u-  
\* råde ( ng. ) til at -  
\* fraråde ng. at -  
\* modtageligt for råd \* følge ngs. råd  
\* være godt rådført ved ( ikke ) at -  
\* være ilde ... ved at -  
\* have > \* aftale med ng. om at - \* tage imod råd  
\* ~ uimodtagelig for råd  
\* i nylig > \* erindring  
\* så længe nogen kan huske, i mands minde

137 The lord is known for his <b>advisability</b> .	* modtagelighed for råd
He always <b>asks</b> ( other people ) <b>for advice</b> .	* bede ( ng.) om råd
As the lord always <b>asks</b> his father's <b>advice</b>	* bede om ngs. råd
the lord acts <b>advisably</b> / never acts <b>inadvisably</b> .	* efterrådeligt * u-...
His father <b>advised that</b> legal <b>advice</b> ( E& should ) be <b>taken</b> .	* tilråde at - * modtage rådgivning / vejledning
His father <b>advised</b> / <b>counselled</b> him <b>to seek</b> legal <b>advice</b> .	* råde ng. til at - * søge ...
As his father <b>advised seeking</b> legal <b>advice</b> ,	* råde til at - * =
the lord <b>advisably sought</b> a lawyer's <b>advice</b> .	* efterrådeligt * søge ng's råd
So <b>on</b> his father's <b>advice</b> the lord <b>advisedly hired</b> a lawyer	* efter ngs. råd * tilrådet * hyre ng. >
<b>10 to advise</b> (him) <b>about</b> business, and <b>advise</b> (him) <b>about</b>	* til at - * rådgive ( ng. ) om ngt. * ... om at -
<b>dealing with</b> his business connections.	* gøre forretninger med ng.
<b>Advising on</b> all kinds of economic matters,	* rådgive om ngt.
he lawyer <b>advises</b> the lord <b>on</b> important financial questions.	* ... ng. ...
As his father <b>advised that</b> a lawyer's <b>counsel</b> always be	* tilråde at -
heard, the lord <b>advises with</b> the lawyer regularly.	* rådføre sig med ng.
The lawyer <b>advises</b> the lord <b>when</b> to come,	* informere ng. om hvxx
how to get there and what document to bring.	*
The lawyer <b>advises</b> ( the lord ) <b>whether</b> to take action.	* rådgive ( ng. ) om hvorvidt
He <b>advises</b> ( the lord ) <b>what</b> to do, and <b>advices</b> where,	* ... ( ng. ) om hvxx
<b>20 when</b> , and how to do it.	*
The lawyer <b>advises</b> extreme <b>caution</b> .	* tilråde ngt. * forsigtighed ( advarsel )
As he <b>advises against precipitate / precipitous</b> decisions,	* fraråde ngt. * forhastet, overilet
he <b>advises</b> the lord <b>against</b> any <b>premature</b> decision.	* råde ng. fra * =
So as he <b>strongly advises against</b> taking <b>rash</b> decisions,	* << * <<
he <b>advises</b> the lord <b>against</b> taking any <b>hasty / snap</b> decision.	* <<<
Eventually <b>all manner</b> (sg.) <b>of</b> papers are lying on the table.	* alle slags / mulige
The lord and the lady <b>look over</b> the papers and accounts.	* kigge / se hen over ngt.
Together they <b>look</b> the papers and accounts <b>over</b>	* kigge / se på ngt. en efter en gennemgå / undersøge ng.
before they decide to buy the manor.	*
<b>30 To eke</b> ( ) <b>out / supplement</b> his <b>income</b> , the lawyer once	* for, -øge / supplere ngt. * indtægt
worked for a magazine's <b>agony column</b> E/A <b>advice column</b> .	* læserbrevkasse for personlige spørgsmål
Working as an <b>agony aunt / uncle</b> E//A <b>advice columnist</b>	* redaktør for ...
<b>as a sideline</b> was an <b>extra, ready source of income</b> .	* bierhverv * ekstra * straks * kilde ⇔ * indtægts-ekstrajob tilgængelig
As a <b>prudent</b> adviser, he often <b>looked</b> ( ) <b>up</b> a subject	* betænksom * slå ngt. op
in order to <b>eke</b> ( ) <b>out</b> his knowledge, and use it <b>advisedly</b> .	* udvide ngt. * velovervejet
As part of an <b>advisory body</b> , offering <b>advisory</b> service,	* rådgivende * organ * =
he <b>made it a point of honour to</b> have no <b>unanswered</b> letters.	* gøre det til > * ( en ) ~ æressag at - * ubesvarede ~ sætte en ære i at - ( breve )
<b>Counselling</b> the readers, he <b>gave</b> good <b>counsel</b> (U).	* rådgive ng. * yde ( god ) rådgivning give ( gode ) råd
A piece of advice may <b>set / create</b> a <b>precedent</b> .	* præcedens, ~ fortilfælde til efterfølgelse

138 The lord **endeavours to act advisedly**,

and avoid any **badly advised / ill-advised** decisions.

Listening to his lawyer's **well (-) advised counsel(s)**,  
he is confident of making **well (-) advised arrangements**.

**It is strongly advised that** a proprietor (E& should) have  
adequate **insurance cover** E/A **coverage** so the lawyer  
**advises that** the lord ( should ) **take out** proper **insurance**.

The lawyer **advises** (him) **which** kind of insurance  
to take out, and, to **cover** accidents, he advises that the lord  
**10** ( should ) take out **insurance against** accidents too.

The lawyer **advises** the **`forward-looking** lord **of** times  
when the **`outlook for** business is good.

He **advises** him **of** any changes **in the manner of** which /  
**in which fashion forward-looking** business should be done.

**In a manner of speaking, humans are gregarious.**

**After the manner of our kind / human beings**  
**or in the manner of many of our kind**, human beings are  
sociable and **seek each other's company**.

**After the fashion of** many animals, people sometimes  
**20** live **in the manner of rooks** in a **rookery**.

**In this manner**, some people live in a **crowded tenement**.

The **aristocracy**, however, **by no manner of means**,  
**fancy / fancies** (E) that kind of company / **living** like that.

The aristocracy maintain, **in no uncertain manner**,  
that they are not at all **to the manner born**.

So the family **moves to** their new **home**.

In the hall, there's a lot of **art** and **craftwork** (U).

There are fine **pieces / works of art** – all fine **artwork(s)**.

There's a **`looking glass** of fine **craftsmanship** as well as  
**30** other **artistic** examples of **handicraft(s)** and **handiwork**  
**made / done / executed** by **skilled craftsmen / <women**.

A **craftsperson** may be a member of a **guild** or union.

The **craft** (pl.) of **carvers** and **carpenters** base their **craft**  
and **work of art** on **manipulative skills** such as  
**wood-craft** when they **manipulate** their tools and machinery.

At a school for **arts and crafts**, **artistic** students learn to  
**develope** their **craftmanship, handiwork** and **artistry**.

A student has **created** a **mavellous / fantastic** design.

'That design is **pleasing to the eye**,' a teacher **marvels**.

\* bestræbe sig på at - \* velovervejet, klogt  
betænksomt

\* uovervejet / uklogt  
ubetænksom

\* velovervejet, klog  
betænksom  
\* =

\* det er stærkt / højest tilrådeligt at -

\* forsikringsdækning

\* råde ng. til at - \* skaffe sig / tegne > \* forsikring

\* rådgive ( ng. ) / informere ng. om hvxx -

\* dække ( ulykke )

\* forsikring mod ng.

\* informere / \* fremadskuende \* om ng.  
underrette ng. > moderne  
\* udsigterne for ng.

\* underrette ng. om ng. \* på hvilken måde

\* = \* fremtidsorienteret

\* ( sagt ) på en vis måde \* selskabelig  
så at sige ( hum. om mennesker )

\* ~ som vi har for skik

\* ~ ligesom mange af os

\* søge > \* hinandens selskab

\* ~ på samme måde / maner / vis som ng.

\* - - - - \* råge \* rågekoloni, ~ rotterede

\* på denne måde \* overfyldt \* udlejningsejendom

\* overklassen \* på ingen tænkelig måde, aldeles ikke  
( de bedste ) under ingen omstændigheder  
\* kunne tænke sig at gøre ng.

\* på en måde, der ikke er til at tage fejl af ( \* usikker )  
med al ønskelig tydelighed  
\* skabt til den slags

\* flytte til ng. \* hjem

\* kunst \* håndværk

\* kunstværk \* =

\* spejl \* håndværksmæssig udførelse

\* kunstnerisk \* håndværksarbejde \* =

\* lave / \* dygtig, erfaren \* mandlig \* kvindelig ...  
udføre ng. udlært håndværker  
\* håndværker \* lav

\* stand \* billedskærer \* snedker \* håndværk  
lav

\* kunstudførelse \* håndterings- / \* færdig- /  
-produktion betjeningsmæssig dygtighed

\* evne / færdighed med træ \* håndtere /  
skovmandsskab betjene ng.

\* kunstarter \* håndværksfag \* kunstnerisk  
( skole ) <=> ~ kunsthåndværker-

\* udvikle ng. \* håndværkskunnen \* = \* kunstnerisk  
dygtighed

\* skabe > \* vidunderlig, fantastisk / =

\* behagelig for øjet \* sibe forbavser / beundrende

139 There's a <b>picture in the manner of / after the fashion of</b>	* billede	* i ngs. stil
the <b>celebrated</b> painter Constable <b>in</b> his early <b>manner</b> .	* berømt	* i ngs. stil
<b>Art is long, life is short</b> - if it's not <b>art for art's sake</b> .	* ~ livet er kort, kunsten lang	* kunst for kunstens > egen skyld
<b>Artistic</b> people have an <b>artistic talent</b> and <b>artistic abilities</b> .	* kunstnerisk	* ... talent * ... evne
People who <b>have a gift</b> and a <b>talent for art</b> may become	* anlæg / begavelse for >	* talent for > * kunst
<b>artists</b> and have an <b>artistic</b> career within <b>the `fine arts</b> .	* kunstner	* kunstnerisk * de skønne kunster ( tegning, maling, skulptur, musik, teater, ballet )
<b>Arty</b> (-`farty ) E/A <b>artsy</b> (-`fartsy ) people try too hard	* kunstsnoberende	
to <b>show ( that )</b> they are <b>interested / not uninterested in art</b> .	* vise at -	* interesseret * uinteresseret i ngt.
The family doesn't intend to give the place a new <b>look</b> .	* udseende stil	
10 <b>By the way, in fashion</b> , the French <b>look</b> is back this year.	* for øvrigt	* indenfor mode * ~ stil, mode
Even a <b>derivative design</b> and <b>style</b> may <b>be</b> the <b>mode</b> .	* afledt	* & udformning * stil * være moden
The hall is <b>plain and simple</b> , and <b>looks ( to the ) east</b> .	* enkel og simpel	* have udsyn / udsigt til / vende mod > * øst
The windows <b>look out over</b> the <b>courtyard</b> ,	* ... over ngt.	* gård
<b>look (up)on</b> the fountain, <b>look on ( to )</b> the <b>drive(&lt;way )</b> ,	* ... ud til ngt.	* ... mod ngt. * indkørsel
and <b>look towards</b> a wood in the distance.	* ... mod ngt.	
So when they <b>look to</b> the east in the morning,	* kigge / se mod	
and <b>look towards</b> the wood, they <b>see</b> the <b>sun rise / rising</b>	* ... ( hen- )	* se solen stå / stige op ( akk. m. inf ) ( sanseuds. genstandsled m. navneform )
behind the <b>wrenched-looking</b> old trees.	* forvredent	* udseende
If you <b>look out of</b> the windows, and <b>gaze at</b> the view from	* kigge / se ud af ngt.	* ... på ngt.
20 the <b>westward(s)-looking banquet room / &lt;ing hall</b>	* vestvendt	* gildessal
and the <b>dining room</b> , you see a <b>lake</b> full of <b>craft</b> (pl.).	* spisestue	* sø * småfartøjer
The family has a <b>craft</b> itself.	* båd	
The living room <b>looks out on</b> the <b>picturesque</b> gardens	* vende / have udsigt ud mod ngt.	* pittoresk malerisk
<b>landscaped</b> in an <b>artistic way</b> .	* ~ landskabeligt anlagt	* ~ på forfuldendt vis
The windows <b>look across</b> the <b>kitchen garden</b> ,	* have udsigt lige gennem	* køkkenhave
and <b>look on to</b> the <b>scenery</b> with the <b>neighbouring village</b> .	* ... over på ngt.	* sceneri * nabo- * landsby
<b>Viewed from</b> a <b>distant `outlook</b> , the <b>quaint</b> village	* betragte ngt. fra >	* fjern * udkigspunkt * malerisk ( betragtet på afstand )
looks like a <b>midget</b> village with its tiny <b>roofs</b> and <b>chimneys</b> .	* lilleput	* tag * skorsten
If you <b>look through</b> a <b>telescope</b> , ( a pair of ) <b>binoculars</b> ,	* se gennem	* teleskop kikkert * ( dobbelt ) kikkert
30 or <b>field glasses</b> , you can <b>look through</b> people's windows.	* =	* =
The mansion has a <b>lookout tower</b> with a <b>steeple</b> on top.	* udkigstårn	* tilspidset tårn (-top) evt. m. spir
<b>Looking `up</b> they see the <b>top-most</b> part of the steeple,	* kigge op	* øverst
the <b>spire</b> , <b>climbing gracefully</b> into the <b>sky</b> .	* spir	* ~ hæve sig > * yndeligt * op mod himmelen
From a <b>lookout</b> in the steeple, <b>rising picturesquely</b>	* udkigssted	* rejse sig > * malerisk
<b>in / into</b> the <b>air</b> , there's a wonderful <b>view / outlook</b> .	* op i luften	* udsigt
There's a <b>wide-ranging outlook over</b> most of the estate –	* vidtrækkende	* ... over ngt.
an <b>amazing view / lookout over</b> the <b>quaint setting</b> :	* forbavsende forbløffende	* = * idyllisk * omgivelser
woodland and <b>grazing, bog(s), marsh(es)</b> and <b>swamp(s)</b> .	* græsningsareal	* mose * marsk * sump

**140 Overlooking the extensive / wide-ranging landscape,**  
 - 'luk -  
 the steeple **looks down on** all the mansion **grounds** (pl.).

The children **play at sailing a man-of-war.**

As they and their **proud ship sail** the **Carribean Sea**,  
 they **play at being 'lookouts sailing at ( the open ) sea**

So **playing look-out men placed / put on** the **lookout**  
 in a **crow's nest** at the top of a **ship's mast**,  
 they **are on the lookout for pirates** and **privateers.**

**Keeping a good lookout**, they **look to see** if there are

**10 any pirate ships or privateers in the offing.**

They **keep a sharp lookout for** the **buccaneers** (hist.).

**All** they **catch sight of** is, however, a **rookery.**

A **rook** is a **common** bird which, like other

**gregarious** animals, **'congregate to breed** in a **rookery.**

**Looking (a)`round / about ( in )** the new **yard** and **garden**,  
 the children **play at looking for** a **lost explorer.**

They **look (a)`round / about for** him all around.

**' Look alive ! Look sharp ! Look sharp about it ! '**

they keep shouting, **looking out for** him.

**20 ' Look upon** where you're going **' they caution** and **warn.**

**' Look where** you're going ! **' they caution** each other.

They **keep watch**, and **warn ( each other ) of** dangers.

**Warning** (each other) **about** enemies and **lurking dangers**,  
 they **warn** (each other) **against scouts** and **surprise attacks.**

They **warn** (each other) **that** an attack may be **in the offing.**

As the **savages look like** attacking, the children **caution**  
 ( each other ) **that** they may have sent out **lookouts.**

**Cautioning** each other **about** all kind of dangers,  
 they **caution ( each other ) against** enemies

**30 lying / waiting in ambush.**

They **caution ( each other ) against** being **ambushed.**

**' Look out ! '** they **warn** each other, **' Watch out ! '**

**Cautioning** each other **to** be on the watch,  
 they **caution** each other **to** avoid being **killed in an ambush.**

In order not to **fall into** an **ambush** as they **charge around**,  
 a clever girl **counsels / urges caution.**

So **exercising** great **caution**, they **proceed to search /**  
**proceed with** their **search with extreme caution.**

\* have udsigt / ydsyn over ngt. \* vidtstrakt

\* ... ned på ng. \* parkanlæg

\* lege at - \* sejle med / \* glids. krigsskib  
 ( man gør ng. ) føre ( et skib )  
 \* ng. > \* stolt \* skib \* sejle på / \* det Caribiske Hav  
 besøje >

\* lege at - \* udkigsmand \* sejle > \* til søs / på havet  
 ( man er ng. ) spejder ( det åbne hav )  
 \* lege ng. \* sætte ng. på udkig

\* udkigstønde \* skibsmast

\* være på udkig efter ng. \* pirat \* kaper  
 sørøver

\* holde godt udkig \* se efter om -

\* sørøverskib \* kaperskib \* i farvandet  
 ~ indenfor synsvidde \* sørøver

\* holde > godt udkig efter >

\* alt ng. få øje på \* rågekoloni

\* råge \* almindelig

\* floklevende \* samles \* yngle \* råge koloni  
 overbefolket bolig

\* kigge / se sig om, -kring i ng. \* gårdsplads \* have  
 A& have

\* lege > \* lede efter > \* vildfaren \* opdagelsesrejsende

\* lede efter ng.

\* fart på  
 lad det gå lidt rask  
 \* kigge / spejde efter ng.

\* kigge / se / \* advare \* =  
 passe på hvxx tilråde  
 \* se sig for \* ... ng.

\* holde udkig \* advare ( ng. ) om ngt.  
 være på vagt  
 \* ... om ng. \* lurende \* fare

\* ... mod \* spejder \* overraskelsesangreb

\* advare ( ng. ) om at - \* nært forestående

\* vilde indfødte \* se ud til at ville - \* advare >

\* ( ng. ) om at - \* spejder

\* advare ng. om ngt.

\* ... mod ng.

\* ligge / vente i > \* baghold

\* advare ( ng. ) mod at \* falde i baghold

\* pas på \* advare / tilråde ng. \* pas på

\* formane ng. om ng.

\* = \* dræbe ng. > \* i et bagholdsangreb

\* falde i baghold \* styrte omkring

\* tilråde > \* anspore / \* forsigtighed  
 tilskynde til >

\* udvise ( stor ) forsigtighed \* fortsætte med at -

\* ... med ng. \* med yderste ...



141 There's a lot to **watch / see on TV**.

Looking forward to **watch / see football**,

the children **look what** time the **match** is.

'It's better to play instead of just **looking `on**,' it's often said.

Before he's allowed to **watch TV**, the oldest son first has to

**attend to / go over / do his schoolwork / homework**.

The teachers often **set** the class ( a **piece of** ) **homework**

so the son **gets** ( a lot of ) **homework** almost every day.

The son has **written** ( ) **`up the notes for homework**.

10 He **looks** ( ) **`over the lesson** in his book. \* see page 200

Having finished his written French homework,

he **looks** it **`over** carefully not to **overlook** any **mistakes**.

He **failed** his last **test on** French, so to **gain** a higher **level**  
of **competence in** ( speaking ) French, he must **brush up on /**

**brush** ( ) **up** his French, and **take / do / sit a test on** it again.

So in order to **pass** the **test**, he **attends** his **school**,

**attends to** the **teaching**, and **looks to ways of improving**.

**Looking in** books for facts, he **looks** ( ) **`out facts in** books.

So he **looks `into textbooks** and **almanac(k)s**,  
ål - / `almênaks

20 and **looks** ( ) **`up words in a dictionary**.

When he can't find a book, he **looks** ( **for** it ) everywhere.

Having **had** a good **look for** the book, he eventually finds it.

He **looks `out for spelling mistakes** before he asks  
his mother, ' Will you please **look at this lesson** ?'

Children that don't **have** a too **strict `upbringing** gladly

**look to** their parents **for help** and **look to** them **to help** them.

The **upbringing** of children is **an art**,

but as **just** parents they know **the art of** upbringing.

The parents **look to it that** their children **behave** ( well ),

30 and tell them **to beware of ill-advised** remarks.

If they don't **look to** their **manners**,

and **behave themselves**, a **dressing-down** is **in the offing**.

One day, hopefully **in a remote future**,

when the children shall **inherit** ( **from** their parents ), they  
in`herit

will **inherit** ( the **estate** / the **property** ) ( **from** their parents ).

As the children shall **inherit** their parent's **possessions**,

all their **estate / property**, they are **brought `up to**

**look `after** the **estate / property** now and in the future.

The children's **outlook** seems good.

\* kigge / se i

\* se på \* fodbold \* =

\* kigge / se efter hvxx - \* (sports-) kamp

\* kigge på

\* se ...

\* passe / lave > \* skolearbejde \* hjemmearbejde  
( incl. hjemmearbejde ) ~ lektier

\* ~ give ng. ngt. for \* hjemmearbejde ~ lektier  
( & en lektie )

\* få > \* hjemmearbejde / lektier for

\* skrive ngt. op \* note angående / \* =  
besked om ngt.

\* kigge / se ngt. igennem \* lektion  
gennemgå / undersøge ngt.

\* grundigt  
del for del  
\* gennemse ngt. \* overse ngt. \* fejl

\* dumpe i > \* prøve i ngt. \* ( op-) nå > \* niveau

\* kompetence i ( at ) ngt. \* genopfriske ngt.

\* = \* gå op til > \* prøve i ngt.

\* bestå > \* prøve \* ~ passe > \* skole

\* ~ følge med i > \* undervisning \* måder at - \* forbedre  
sig på

\* kigge / se i ngt. efter ngt. \* ~ søge ngt. i ngt.

\* kigge / se i > \* tekstbog \* almanak

\* slå ngt. op \* ordbog

\* kigge / lede ( efter ngt. ) + adv.

\* & lede en del efter ngt.

\* passe på ngt. \* stave fejl

\* se på / undersøge ngt. \* lektion i bog

\* få / have > \* streng > \* opdragelse

\* ~ stole på / \* for at få hjælp \* til at hjælpe ng.  
regne med ng.

\* opdragelse \* kunst

\* retfærdig \* kunsten at -

\* se efter / sørge for / \* opføre sig ( ordentligt )  
passe på at -

\* vare sig / vogte sig for ngt. \* ubetænksom  
( kun inf. og imp. ) !

\* passe på ngt. \* manerer, opførsel

\* opføre sig ordentligt \* skældud \* i farvandet

\* i en fjern fremtid  
langt ude i fremtiden  
\* arve ( fra ng. )

\* ... ( ngt. ) ( fra ng. ) \* ejendom ( grund + bygninger )

\* arve ngt. \* ejendele

\* besiddelser \* opdrage ng. til at -

\* tage sig af ngt. \* ejendom

\* fremtidsudsigte ( -er )

<b>142</b> When the <b>elder</b> brother sometimes <b>looks`into</b> a book,	* ældre	* kigge i ngt.
he may be just <b>skimming ( through )</b> the book.	* ( gennem- ) skimme ngt. læse ngt. her og der	
If he <b>flicks through</b> the <b>pages of</b> a book with pictures,	* bladre hurtigt gennem siderne	
his baby brother may ask if he may <b>look`on with</b> him.	* kigge på sammen med ng.	
So <b>turning</b> the <b>pages / E&amp; turning`over</b> the <b>pages</b>	* vende siderne / blade / bladre	
they <b>leaf through</b> the book .	* bladre igennem ( en bog )	
As they <b>dip into</b> the book, they study together the pictures	* dykke ( dyppe ) ned / kigge tilfældigt i ngt.	
before they <b>turn (over)</b> the <b>page</b> .	* vende bladet / siden	
When there's a <b>strange noise</b> they <b>look`up</b> :	* besynderlig, mærkelig, underlig	* lyd
<b>10</b> they <b>look up from</b> the book.	fremmed, ukendt * ... fra ngt.	* se op
<b>Having</b> a deep and <b>abiding / lasting love for</b> their family,	* ~ føle >	* vedvarende
the <b>youthful grandparents</b> often <b>go to look ( )`up</b> their family.	* ung- dommelig	* bedste- forælder
They offer <b>go and / eA go see</b> their family.	* tage af sted for at -	* tage af sted for at -
The parents <b>look`out for</b> the grandparents at five	* spejde efter / vente på ngt.	* kærlighed for ng.
and <b>look out for</b> them at the station.	* =	
' <b>Look who's</b> here,' the parents tell the children.	* se / læg mærke til hvxx	
' It's a gift for you. <b>Just look !</b> ' the grandmother <b>prompts</b>	* se bare bare se	* tilskynde ( ng. )
( the grandchildren <b>employed in playing</b> ).	* optaget af at -	
' <b>Don't look a gift horse in the mouth,</b> ' the parents	* man skal ikke skue given hest i munden	
<b>20 admonish</b> their children when they ask about the price.	* formane / mildt irettesætte ng.	
The parents <b>look`on</b> as the children play the new game.	* kigge / se`på	
As <b>`onlookers</b> , the parents <b>merely</b> look on.	* tilskuer	* bare
<b>Lookers-`on</b> are <b>lookers</b> who just looks on.	miêli betragter * =	blot
When they play cards, the children may <b>have a`look-in (E)</b> .	* chance for at være med	
It's a <b>rook</b> who tries to <b>rook</b> a <b>rookie</b> .	* svindler	* snyde / bedrage / narre ng.
If they play for real, the children won't <b>get a look-in</b> .	* <<	* nybegynder novice
After a few days the grandparents <b>look to</b> a quiet time.	* se hen til ngt.	
Even if hey <b>look forward to</b> a quiet time	* se frem til ngt.	
they <b>look forward to</b> seeing the family again.	* ... at -	
<b>30</b> They are <b>looking forward to</b> seeing them again.	* =	
The doctor sometimes <b>looks`in on</b> the family.	* > ... hos	
When he <b>looks`in at noon</b> , the father asks,	* kigge ind / komme på besøg	* om middagen
' Will you please <b>look at</b> my ankle ? '	* & undersøge ngt.	
After this <b>`look-in</b> , having <b>had a`look-in</b> at the ankle,	* hastigt besøg	* hastigt blik
the doctor wants to <b>look ( )`over</b> the ankle the next day.	* undersøge ngt. nærmere	
<b>Nervous about / of harming</b> their <b>health</b> ,	* bekymret over / bange for at -	* skade >
all of the family <b>look out for</b> their health.	* passe på ngt.	* helbred
Wearing too small shoes may cause <b>corns</b> and <b>bunions</b> .	* ligtn	* knyst
	`bûnjênz	

<b>143 Taking charge of</b> the manor after the old lady, the new lord and lady have the <b>overall responsibility</b> while the <b>day-to-day running</b> is divided into <b>manageable sections</b> .	* påtage sig / ( over- ) tage > * overordnet	* ansvar / styring af ngt.  * ansvar
<b>Having charge of</b> the <b>day-to-day business</b> , a couple of <b>stewards manage</b> the manor. Managing the familie's estate / property, one <b>steward has charge of</b> the <b>household</b> - of <b>obtaining</b> food and <b>directing</b> the servants - while the other <b>steward is in charge of</b> the farming.	* daglig * have ledelsesansvaret for / stå for ledelsen af ngt. * forvalter * * = * have ledelsesansvaret for ngt. ( hushovmester ) stå for ledelsen af at - * skaffe ngt. * = ( godsforvalter )	* drift * overkommelig * sektion indeling * daglig * drift * bestyre ngt.  * husstand * instruere ng. * ~ stå for ngt.
<b>10 The stewards look lively with</b> the daily <b>working</b> . He has a <b>practical outlook</b> : a <b>practical outlook on life</b> . Unemployed <b>farm workers</b> and <b>farm hands</b> , <b>look to</b> the <b>estate agent</b> (E) <b>for</b> employment / E& <b>engagement</b> . Unfortunately, there's suddenly a <b>gloomy `outlook</b> . Quite unexpectedly business starts to <b>look `down</b> . <b>Looked at from that point of view</b> some of their <b>qualms /</b> <b>misgiving(s)</b> prove(s) to be <b>just</b> . Their <b>qualms / misgiving(s) about</b> their move <b>prove(s)</b> <b>in (a) dramatic fashion, painfully appropriate.</b> ê`prêupri êt	* have travlt med ngt. * praktisk * ~ indstilling * landarbejder * gårdskarl * henvende sig til ng. > * forvalter * ~ vedrørende * dystre udsigter * vise / pege/ gå nedad forværres * betragte ngt. > * fra den synsvinkel * = * tvivl / betænkelighed (-er ) overfor ngt. * på dramatisk vis * smerteligt * udsigterne er mørke * ikke for god for ngt. * udsigterne for ngt. * mørke udsigter for ngt. * vende hver femøre * se mørke ud * ~ være bagud med > ( misligholdelse af > ) ( fremtiden ) ser sort / trist ud for ng. * det ser slemt ( for ng. )	* arbejde drift * ... til livet & livssyn * ansættelse * tvivl betænkelighed * berettiget * vise sig > * passende på sin plads * handel * trist håbløs * udsigt * gæld * forbedre ngt. * lille bitte * gå opad blive bedre * fremtidsudsigter * ~ se lysere ud * opadgående * råbe af glæde, ~ juble * gode ... for ngt. * tingene ser godt ud * aldrig ser ( så ) tilbage ( i tiden ) & ikke have ( havde ) tilbagegang * =
<b>20 The outlook is black and none too good for</b> trade. The <b>outlook for</b> business is <b>bleak</b> . There is a <b>bad lookout for</b> business. They have to <b>look twice at every penny</b> . As business figures <b>look bad</b> there's a <b>bleak prospect</b> . <b>Defaulting on</b> their <b>loans</b> , they are <b>in default on</b> their <b>debt</b> , so the future <b>looks `black / bleak for</b> the family. Things are really <b>looking bad</b> ( <b>for</b> them ) as conditions <b>look towards financial ruin</b> and <b>bankruptcy</b> .** !		
So they desperately <b>look to ways to improve</b> business. <b>30 Looking for</b> even a <b>slight</b> improvement in business, they <b>look to</b> the day when business begins to <b>look `up</b> . Fortunately, rising prices <b>brighten ( up )</b> the <b>outlook</b> . As the business outlook <b>brightens ( up )</b> , <b>things look up</b> . ' <b>Look up</b> everybody – prices are <b>looking up</b> – we <b>are on a roll</b> , ' they <b>shout with joy</b> . The <b>outlook is good</b> as there's a <b>good outlook for</b> trade. <b>Business is looking good</b> , and <b>things are looking `good</b> . <b>From now / then on</b> the family <b>never look / looked `back</b> . <b>Since then</b> , the family <b>never looked behind</b> them.	* pege mod > * økonomisk ruin * bankerot fallit * rette opmærk- somheden mod ngt. * håbe på ngt. * se frem / hen til ngt. * gøre ngt. lysere * blive lysere klare op * op med humøret * ~ det køre for ng. * udsigterne * ~ udsigterne er gode * fra nu ( da ) af * siden dengang	** <b>look at</b> <b>page 200</b> * forbedre ngt. * lille bitte * gå opad blive bedre * fremtidsudsigter * ~ se lysere ud * opadgående * råbe af glæde, ~ juble * gode ... for ngt. * tingene ser godt ud * aldrig ser ( så ) tilbage ( i tiden ) & ikke have ( havde ) tilbagegang * =

<b>144 At a time in history</b> , people gradually learned to <b>practise</b>	* i historien	* dyrke >
<b>agriculture</b> instead of <b>gaining a living as hunter-gatherers</b> , `agrikult\$ê moving from place to place <b>in</b> their <b>hunt for</b> food.	* landbrug * i ngs. jagt efter ( føde )	* skaffe til livets ophold / ernære sig som ngt. * jæger-samler
Agriculture - farming, <b>husbandry</b> , or <b>tillage</b> - is the art of	* landbrug	
<b>cultivating</b> / <b>farming land</b> and <b>crops</b> .	* kultivere / dyrke >	* land * afgrøde
<b>Breeding</b> plants and animals to <b>raise</b> crops and <b>livestock</b> ,	* fremavle ( dyr / planter )	* opdrætte ... * dyrehold
<b>farming breeding stock</b> of <b>cattle</b> , pigs, sheep, <b>poultry</b> , etc.,	* ~ holde * avls- * besætning	* kvæg * fjerkræ
people could now live a <b>settled</b> way of life on a farm.	* fastboende	
Able to <b>accumulate</b> a <b>store</b> of food, a <b>sedentary</b> farmer ê`kju~mjêleit	* ophobe / samle ngt. * underholde / brødføde ng.	* forråd lager * fastboende
<b>10</b> now had the possibility of <b>supporting</b> a group of people		
larger than his own family to <b>live</b> and <b>work for</b> him <b>on</b> the farm.	* leve / bo >	* arbejde for ng. * på en bondegård
Agriculture soon became the ( <b>pre&gt;</b> ) <b>dominant</b> culture.	* dominerende fremherskende	
Besides his family and his <b>freemen</b> , a farmer might have	* fri mand	
<b>thralls</b> or <b>slaves</b> working on the farm. #râ~lz	* træl	* slave
Farmers <b>settled</b> together <b>in</b> villages and <b>compounds</b>	* bosætte sig / slå sig ned i ngt.	* hegn- / muromkranset bebyggelse
in order to <b>cooperate in</b> farming, and to cooperate in	* samarbejde i ( at gøre ) ngt.	
<b>defending themselves against attackers</b> .	* forsvare sig >	* mod ng.
Men <b>capable of bearing arms</b> might <b>travel</b> around	* i stand til at- ~ våbenfør	* bære * våben * rejse
the country to be <b>enlisted</b> as <b>housecarls</b> , members of	* hverve ng. som ngt.	* hirdmand
<b>20</b> the <b>household troops</b> or <b>bodyguard</b> (coll).	* livgarde / -vagt	* =
<b>Enlisted to protect</b> his superiour, a <b>bodyguard</b> must be	* hverve ng. til at -	* bekytte ng. * livvagt
prepared to <b>make the supreme sacrifice</b> .	* bringe det højeste offer ( ~ være parat til at dø )	
<b>Making supreme efforts</b> , the most successful households	* gøre sig de yderste anstrengelser	
who could afford the most men <b>capable of bearing arms</b>	* våbenfør	
may <b>succeed in battling</b> for <b>supremacy</b> in the region.	* få succes / nå sit mål med at -	* kæmpe ( for ngt. ) * overlegenhed / -herredømme
Having <b>succeeded in</b> the <b>battle for</b> supremacy,	* ... med ngt.	* i kampen for ngt.
the <b>supreme achievement</b> was the <b>establishing of</b>	* ypperste mest fremragende	* bedrift resultat * etablering oprettelse
<b>total supremacy over</b> the neighbouring farmers.	* overherredømme over ngt.	
<b>According to</b> their <b>economic</b> and <b>social power</b> ,	* afhængig af ngt.	* økonomisk mæssig * samfunds- magt, styrke indflydelse
<b>30</b> the most successful <b>large farmers</b> or <b>landowners</b> would	* storbonde	* jordbesidder
<b>fortify</b> their residences to <b>consolidate</b> their <b>supremacy</b> .	* befæste ngt.	* grundfæste * overherredømme
The most unsuccessful farmers, <b>impoverished</b> by <b>ill luck</b> ,	* forarme ng.	* uheld
<b>incompetence</b> or debt(s), ended up as <b>serfs</b> or slaves. in`kâmpitens	* inkompetance uduelighed	* livegen
The <b>supreme lords</b> were to form the <b>upper class</b> (<es)	* øverste herre	* overklasse
called the <b>aristocracy</b> , the <b>nobility</b> , or the <b>peerage</b> . - `stâ -	* aristokratiet, adelsstanden aristo: bedst + krati: styre	* adelsstanden * =
An <b>aristocrat</b> , a <b>lord</b> , a <b>noble</b> , a <b>nobleman</b> , or a <b>peer</b>	* aristokrat adelsmand	* = * =
is a member of an <b>aristocratic</b> and <b>noble</b> family. `aristê`kratik E/EA ê`ris -	* aristokratisk	* adelig
A government or state ruled by the <b>privileged</b> aristocracy	* privilegeret	
is called an <b>aristocracy</b> .	* aristokrati, adelsvælde	

**145** A **chief** or **chieftain** is the leader of a **clan** or **tribe**, perhaps **elected by acclamation**.

Some **tribal** chiefs or **lords** may **join forces** and choose one **among them** / **in** their **midst** to be their **supreme ruler**.

Being chosen, or by their own **supreme effort(s)**, a chief or other successful **pretender** ( to the **throne** ) may become a king or queen of an independent country.

**Being in alliance with** all kinds of supporters, **aids** a pretender **to achieve** / **in achieving** their **aim**.

To **fulfil** their **supreme achievement**, a king or queen

**10** must **claim sovereignty over** all their **territory**.

To **proclaimed** the **full sovereignty of** the country,

a **sovereign ruler** or government must **possess** and **exercise sovereignty over** the **entire** territory.

A **suzerain** is a **sovereign** or a state who or which **exercises suzerainty**: who or which **exercises** political

**control over** a **dependent** state.

**Autocracy** (U) is a system of government in which one person **reigns supreme**.

An **autocracy** is a country in which one person,

**20** the **sovereign**, has **sovereign power** and authority.

**Exercising power** as a sovereign, a **monarc** as a king or queen **reigns over** a country and its inhabitants.

A country ruled by a king or queen is called a **kingdom**,

a **realm**, or a **monarchy**.

**Monarchy** is a system of government by a **monarch**, a king or queen, who may be **appointed** by the aristocracy.

In a **hereditary** monarchy, the king or queen has become a **hereditary ruler** so that their **successor** ( to the throne ) is one of their family **in order of succession** ( to the throne ).

**30** In a **monarchy**, the power of the monarch may be **restricted** by certain rights and **privileges** of the aristocracy.

In an **absolute monarchy**, the **absolute ruler** is an **absolute monarch**, i.e. an **autocratic** king or queen **exercising absolute rule**.

An **autocrat** may be a **despot**, **dictator**, or a **tyrant**:

a **despotic**, **dictatorial**, and **tyrannical** / **tyrannous** ruler using his **despotic**, **dictatorial**, and **tyrannical** power in a **cruel** way.

**Coming to power holds** much **appeal** for some people.

\* høvding \* klan \* stamme

\* vælge ng. > \* ved hyldest ( mundtlig tilkendegivelse ) \* stamme- \* stormand \* slå sig sammen

\* en blandt dem / \* øverste \* regent en fra deres midte hersker \* den yderste anstrengelse ( de ... ..r ) \* ( tron- ) prætentent

\* være i alliance / forbund med ng.

\* hjælpe ng. > \* med at - \* opnå sit mål

\* fuldføre / \* & storslået \* bedrift, resultat opnå > fuld-, gennemførelse \* hævde suveræniteten / \* territorium overhøjhed over ngt.

\* proklamere ngt. \* fuld ...

\* øverste \* hersker \* besidde >

\* udøve > \* suveræniteten / \* hele ( området ) overhøjhed over >

\* overhøjhed \* enehersker

\* udøve > \* overhøjhed \* ... >

\* kontrol over ngt. \* afhængig

\* autokrati enevoldsstyre \* regere \* øverst

\* <<

\* øverste hersker \* ( have ) enerådende > \* magt / regent

\* udøve > \* magt \* monark, enehersker

\* regere / herske over ngt. / ng.

\* kongerige

\* kongerige \* monarki

\* monarki

\* udpege ng.

\* arveligt

\* arvemæssig \* efterfølger ( til ngt. )

\* i henhold til > \* ( arve- / tron- ) ( række- ) følge ( ... )

\* monarki

\* begrænse ngt. \* privilegium

\* enevældsmonarki \* enevældig \* hersker

\* enevældig \* monark \* enevældig

\* udøve > \* enevældig \* styre ( = enevælde )

\* enevoldshersker \* despot \* diktator \* tyrann

\* despotisk \* diktatorisk \* tyrannisk volds Herskende

= \* grusom

\* kommen til magt \* ~ have > \* tiltrækning \* på ng.

**146 Dictatorial** rule, the rule of a **dictator**, is **dictatorship**.

- `tå -

**Tyrannical** rule, the rule of a tyrant, is **tyranny**.

ˈtirəni

**Despotic** rule, the cruel rule of a **despot**, is **despotism**.

de`spatik

In the **reign** and **during** the **reign** of a **reigning** despot,

his **exercising** a **reign** of **terror** made everybody

live in fear all the time **during** his **reign** of **terror**.

An **enlightened despot** tries to **use** his great **power**

in a good way; **hence enlightened despotism**.

Trying to be a **just ruler**, an enlightened despot

may **cultivate** an **air** of a **father** or **mother figure**.

**10 Going out of** their **way** to **cultivate** the / **their people**,

such despots especially **cultivate** their **relations** with

the **charmed circle** (sg.) and the **chattering classes** (E).

A **republic** is a country that is governed by a president

ri`pūblik

or prime minister and **politicians elected** by the people.

A form of government may collapse due to **internal**

or **external pressure** and be followed by **anarchy**: political

and social disorder due to **absence of** government control.

-`ā~dê

Besides a **state** of society without government and law,

**anarchy** means a theory that **regards** the absence of all

**20** direct or **coersive** government **as** a political **ideal** and that

ai`di~êl

**proposes** the **voluntary** and cooperative **association of**

**individuals** and groups as the **principal mode of**

organized society.

**Anarchism** is an **ideology** including a **doctrine urging**

`anêkizm

the **abolition** of government or **governmental restraint**

as the **indispensable condition for** the full social

and political liberty.

Hence, an **anarchist** is a person who advocates

`anêkist

anarchism either a believer in voluntary association or

**30** a person who **seeks** to **overturn** by **violence**

all **constituted** forms and **institutions** of government.

So people with **anarchic** beliefs advocate an **anarchic**

a`nā~kik

lifestyle and an **anarchic** society.

**Theocracy** is the government of a country by religious

#i`âkrêsi

leaders or a country **under theocratic rule**.

-`kra -

**Guided by the Supreme Being**, the religious leaders

believe Him to be the **most powerful** being **imaginable**.

\* diktatorisk

\* diktatur

\* tyrannisk

\* tyranni

\* despotisk

\* despot

\* despoti

voldshersker

voldsherredømme

\* i >

\* under >

\* regeringstid

\* regerende

\* udøve >

\* regime

⇔

terror- / rædsels-

\* under >

\* & periode

\* =

\* oplyst

\* despot

\* bruge >

\* magt

\* heraf

\* oplyst

\* enevælde

\* derfor

\* retfærdig

\* hersker

\* dyrke >

\* fremtoning af ngt.

\* ... figur

\* ~ anstrenge sig for at -

\* kultivere ng.

\* folket /

sit folk

\* pleje sine >

\* forhold til ng.

\* begunstiget

\* kreds

\* de toneangivende kredse

klike

\* republik

\* politiker

\* vælge ng. ( ved afstemning )

\* intern

indre

\* ydre >

\* pres

\* anarki

\* fravær af ngt.

\* ~ ( samfunds- ) tilstand

\* anarki

\* anse / betragte ngt. >

\* tvungen ( styre )

\* som >

\* ideal

\* foreslå

\* frivillig

\* sammenslutning /

forening af ng.

\* individ

\* overordnet

\* form for ngt.

\* enkeltperson

vigtigst

\* anarkisme

\* doktrin, lære-

\* insistere på /

trossætning

tilråde ngt.

\* afskaffelse

\* regeringsbestemt

\* begrænsning

tvang

\* ufravigelig

\* betingelse for ngt.

\* betingelse for ngt

\* anarkist

\* frivillig

\* søge at -

\* omstyrte /

\* ( med ) vold

vælte ngt.

\* officielt oprettet

\* institution

( anstalt, stiftelse )

\* anarkistisk

\* =

\* =

\* teokrati

gudsstyre

\* underlagt / med

\* teokratisk

\* styre

\* ( ng.) ført / vejledt ( af ng. )

\* det højeste væsen

~ Gud

\* mest \* magtfulde ( væsen ) \* ~ man kan forestille sig

<b>147 The Middle Ages</b> are the time in <b>European</b> history juêrê pi-ên	* middelalderen	* europæisk
between <b>classical antiquity</b> and the Italian <b>Renaissance</b> ri`neisns E/A `renêsa~ns	* klassisk	* antik
( from the late 5th century <b>A.D.</b> to about 1350 ): sometimes	* Anno Domini, der Herrens år efter Kristus	* renæssance
<b>restricted to</b> the later part of this <b>period</b> ( after 1100 )	* begrænse ngt. til >	* periode
and sometimes extended to 1450 or 1500 with the <b>fall of</b>	* fald af ngt. >	
<b>Constantinople</b> to the <b>Turks</b> (1453), the European <b>discovery</b> kânstanti`nêupl / `kân...`nêupl	* Konstantinopel	* til ng. * tyrker * opdagelse af ngt.
of <b>America</b> (1492), and the successful <b>challenge to</b>	* Amerika	* udfordring af ng. >
the <b>papacy</b> of the <b>national reform movements</b> .	* pavevælde * fra ng. * national * reform * bevægelse	
( <b>Protestantism</b> created the <b>Reformation</b> )	* protestantisme	* reformationen
<b>10</b>		
<b>THE THREE ORDERS / THE THREE ESTATES.</b>	* orden, stand	* stand
<b>Medi(a)eval</b> society was a carefully <b>graded hierarchy</b> medi`i~vêl `haira~ki	* middelalder- ( lig )	* graduere * hieraki / opdele ngt.
based on the division of orders according to one's <b>function</b> :	* funktion	
the first estate - those who <b>pray</b> ,	* virke	
the second estate - those who fight,	* bede	
and the third estate - those who work.	*	
The ( mental ) <b>image</b> of a <b>tripartite</b> society divided by tra`i`pã-tait	* ( mental ) billede, forestilling	* tredelt / -parts / -sidig
function has become a <b>hallmark</b> of medieval European history.	* kendemærke / -tegn / særkende for ngt.	
An <b>understanding</b> of this tripartite division of European	* forståelse af ngt.	
<b>20</b> society is important both for our understanding of	*	
medieval history, but also for the <b>subsequent</b> history of	* efterfølgende	
the Continent, especially in the 18th century.	*	
It was during that century that the <b>ancient regime</b> faced `ein\$ênt rei`\$i~m	* ældgammel	* styre (-form )
its <b>gravest</b> challenge during the <b>heady</b> days of the French	* alvorlig	* tilhovedstigende
<b>Revolution.</b>	* vægtig	* berusende
One of the first things the <b>revolutionaries abolished</b> was	* revolution	
<b>feudalism</b> ( August 4, 1789 ) and with it, the <b>remnants</b> of `fju~dêlizêm	* omvæltning	
a society based on <b>status</b> and <b>prestige</b> .	* revolutionær ( person )	* afskaffe ngt.
Indeed, prestige and status <b>oftentimes</b> (eA) became more	* feudalisme	* resterne af ngt.
<b>30</b> important than <b>wealth</b> or land.	* lenssystem	
In the Middle Ages, according to social and economic	* & stilling	* & anseelse
power, the aristocracy formed a social, economic, and military	* position	
<b>hierarchical</b> system of <b>mutual obligations between</b> haiê`rã~kikl	* ofte	
<b>inferior vassals</b> and their superiors, their lords and <b>overlords</b> . vasl	* rigdom	
<b>Staying in power</b> , that was <b>all that mattered</b> .	*	
A lord may <b>request</b> a <b>grant</b> ( of land or money ) <b>from</b>	* hierakisk	* gensidig * forpligtelse mellem ng.
an overlord, and, in return for a privilege, each lord could	* pyramideformet	
<b>charge</b> their inferiors <b>with meeting</b> / <b>fulfilling</b> an <b>obligation</b> .	* undergiven	* vasal * overherre
	* lensmand	
	* forblive i >	* magt * ~ alt hvad der betyder noget
	* anmode om >	* tildeling af land / penge * fra ng.
	*	
	* bebyrde ng. med at -	* opfylde >
	* ~ pålægge ng. at -	* pligt

**148** This so called **feudal system** is a social and economic system based on **tenure**, the **holding** of lands **in fee** or **fief**, and on the **resulting** relations between **feudal overlord** and **feudal vassal** holding a **fee**, **fief** or **feud**.

So a fee, feud or fief is a **feudal estate**; a **tenure** of land

**`subject to feudal obligations.**

Both kings and great lords distributed life **grants of** lands and offices **in return for** a **pledge of homage** - a promise of <sup>`håmid§</sup> loyalty and service.

**10** A feudal overlord was called a **suzerain**.

Having **pledged** ( their ) **loyalty to** their superior, a feudal vassal was a **feudal tenant granted the use of land in return for** which he **rendered homage, fealty,** <sup>`fi~êlti</sup> and usually military service **to** his lord or other superior.

In return for the services that the **holder of** a fee had **pledged to** render, the holder had **security of tenure**; security of the **holding of real property** of his superior.

The practice **developed into** the grant of **hereditary** fees, feuds or fiefs ( feudal estates ).

**20** The **resulting fragmentation** of authority was **reflected / mirrored in** the **rapid growth of** feudal armies, often **engaged in** private **wars**, and the development of the **castle** as an **administrative** and military centre.

Local **royal** officers and great **landholders increased** their <sup>in`kri~st</sup> power and forced the king to **grant** them **rights of** private **justice** and **immunity from** royal **interference**.

The feudal system first appeared in **definite** form in the **Frankish** lands in the 9th and 10th century.

A long **dispute** between **scholars** as to whether its **30 institutional** basis was **Roman** or **Germanic** remains **somewhat inconclusive**; it can **safely** be said that feudalism **emerged from** the **condition of** society **arising from** the **disintegration** of Roman institutions and the further **disruption caused** by Germanic **inroads** and **settlements**.

Feudalism spread from France to **Spain**, Italy, and later

**Eastern Europe.**  
<sup>`juêrêp</sup>

* feudalsystem		
* besiddelsesret	* lenspagt	* =
* resulterende	* feudal	* overherre
* ... vasal lensmand		* len
* ... landområde		* besiddelse af ngt.
* underlagt / -givet		* ... forpligtelse
* tildeling / bevilling af ngt.		
* til gengæld for >	* løfte / ed / tilsagn om ngt.	* lenshyldning hyldet, tribut
*		
* overherre		
* officielt love ( sin ) >		* loyalitet til ng.
* feudal	* forpagter	* tildele ng. > * brug af > * & jord
* til gengæld for ngt.	* give / yde >	* lenshyldning hyldet, tribut
* til ng.		* troskab enslydighed
* indehaver af ngt.		
* forpligte sig til at -		* tryghed i besiddelsesretten / ansættelsen
* besiddelse		* fast ejendom
* udvikle sig til ngt.		* arvelig
*		
* fragmentation opsplitning		* afspejlet
* ... i ngt.	* hurtig	* vækst af ngt.
* holde ng. beskæftiget i >		* krig
* borg		* administrativ forvaltningsmæssig
* royal kongelig	* jordbesidder	* øge ngt.
* bevillige / tildele ng. ngt.		* rettigheder til ngt
* retspleje	* immunitet overfor / fritagelse fra ngt.	* indblanding
* endelig		
* frankisk		
* uenighed strid		* lærd
* instiftelsesmæssig	* romersk	* germansk
* i nogen grad	* uafklaret	* med sikkerhed
* opstå fra ngt.	* tilstand i ngt.	* opstå >
* fra ngt.		* opløsning sammenbrud
* nedbrydning	* fjendtlige strejftog / indfald	* bosættelse
* Spanien		
* Østeuropa		



149 In England the Frankish form was <b>imposed</b> by William I	* påtvinge / indføre ngt.		
( William the <b>Conqueror</b> ) after 1066, although most of	* erobrer		
the <b>elements</b> of feudalism were already <b>present</b> .	* element / enkeltdele af ngt.		* til stede
It was <b>extended eastward</b> into <b>Slavic</b> lands to the <b>marches</b>	* østpå	* slavisk	* grænseområder
which were continually <b>battered</b> by new <b>invasions</b> .	* banke / hamre løs på ngt.		* invasion indtrængen
Feudalism was <b>adopted partially</b> in <b>Scandinavian</b>	* antage / indføre ngt.	* delvis	* skandinavisk
countries.	*		
The important <b>features</b> ( of feudalism ) were similar	* element / del / funktion af ngt.		
<b>throughout</b> , but there existed definite national differences.	* karaktertræk / egenskab ved ngt,		
	* helt igennem		
10 Feudalism <b>continued</b> in all parts of Europe until the <b>end of</b>	* fortsætte		* ende / slutning af ngt.
the 14th century.	*		
The <b>concentration of</b> power in the hands of a few	* koncentration / samling af ngt		
was always a great <b>disruptive force</b> in the feudal system.	* opløsende, nedbrydende		* kraft
	* ødelæggende		
The <b>rise</b> of <b>powerful</b> monarchs in France, Spain,	* opkomst af ngt.		* magtfuld
and England <b>broke</b> ( ) <b>down</b> the local organization.	* nedbryde ngt.		
Another <b>disruptive force</b> was the <b>increase in</b> communi>	* nedbrydende	* kraft	* stigning i ngt.
cation, which broke down the <b>isolated</b> / <b>lonely</b> manor,	* opløsende		
	* isoleret / ensomt beliggende		
<b>assisted</b> the <b>rise</b> of towns and <b>boroughs</b> , and <b>facilitated</b>	* hjælpe med til ngt.	* opståen	* købstad
the <b>emergence</b> of the <b>burgess</b> class.			* lette / formidle ngt.
	* fremkomst / opdukken af ngt.	* borger ( i en by med købstads-	rettigheder )
20 This process was greatly <b>accelerated</b> in the 14th century	* accelerere / fremskynde / sætte i gang / fart i ngt.		
and did much to <b>destroy</b> the feudal <b>classifications</b> of	* ødelægge ngt.		* klassifikation klasseopdeling
the society.	*		
The system <b>broke down</b> gradually.	* bryde sammen		
It was not completely destroyed in France until the French	*		
Revolution in 1789, and it <b>persisted</b> in <b>Germany</b> until 1848	* vare ved		* Tyskland
and in <b>Russia</b> until 1917.	* Rusland		
Many <b>relics</b> / <b>leftovers</b> from feudalism still <b>obtain</b> , and its	* levn fra ngt.		* vare ved
<b>influence remains on</b> the institutions of <b>Western Europe</b> .	* indflydelse	* vedblive at være på ngt.	* fortsætte med at eksistere
			* Vesteuropa
Of course, the <b>rise</b> of feudalism in areas formerly	* opståen af ngt.		
30 <b>dominated</b> by Roman institutions <b>meant</b> a breakdown	* dominere / beherske ngt.		* betyde ngt.
of central government.	*		
In <b>regions untouched</b> by Roman customs, the feudal	* region område		* uberørt / uforstyrret af ngt.
system was, however, a <b>further step towards</b> organization	* yderligere skridt mod ngt.		
and <b>centralization</b> .	* centralisering		
The system used and <b>altered</b> institutions then <b>in existence</b> .	* forandre / ændre ngt.		* ~ eksisterende ( som fandtes )

**150** Important in an **economic sense** was the Roman **villa** with the peculiar **rental**, the **precarium**, a **temporary** grant of land that the **grantor** could **revoke** at any time.

**Increasingly**, a poor landholder **transferred** his land to a **prorector** and **received** it **back** as a precarium, **thus giving rise to** the **manorial** system.

A **manor** was a **landed estate** or **territorial unit**, originally of the nature of a feudal **lordship**, consisting of a lord's **demesne** and of lands within which he had the right to **exercise** certain **privileges**, **exact** certain **fees**, etc.

Today a manor, manor house or mansion is the main house of any estate, **plantation**, etc.

It was also possible for the manorial system to **develop from** the Germanic village, as in England.

The development of feudal estates, fiefs, fees or **feuds** was also **influenced** by the Roman institution of **patrocinium** and the **German** institution of **mundium**, by which the powerful people surrounded themselves with men who **rendered** them service, especially military service, **20 in exchange for protection**.

More and more, this service-and-protection contract came to involve the granting of a **beneficium**, the use of land, which **tended to** become hereditary.

In law, **primogeniture** is the **rule** of inheritance **whereby** land **descends to** the oldest son.

Under the feudal system primogeniture **generally governed** the inheritance of land **held** in **military tenure**.

The effect of this rule was to keep the father's land for the **support of** the son who rendered the military service.

**30** When feudalism **declined** and the payment of a **tax** was **substituted for** military service, the need for primogeniture disappeared.

In England, **consequently**, there was **enacted** the **Statute of Wills** (1540) which **permitted** the oldest son to be **entirely cut off from** inheriting, and in the 17<sup>th</sup> century military tenure was **abolished**.

Primogeniture is, nevertheless, still **customary** in England.

- \* i økonomisk forstand
- \* villa landsted
- \* lejeaftale
- \* midlertidig besiddelse
- \* midlertidig foreløbig
- \* overdrager
- \* tilbagekalde ngt.
- \* i tiltagende grad
- \* overdrage ngt. til ng.
- \* stedfortrædende leder
- \* få ngt. tilbage
- \* således
- \* betyde fremkomst af >
- \* herregårds- (lens-) gods-
- \* herregård
- \* landejendom
- \* territorial
- \* enhed (lens-) gods
- \* herredømme domæne
- \* jordtilliggende ejerjord
- \* udøve >
- \* privilegie
- \* afkræve >
- \* afgift / betaling
- \*
- \* plantage
- \*
- \* udvikle sig fra ngt.
- \* len
- \* påvirke
- \* patronats- / skytsherforhold
- \* tysk
- \* latiniseret ord for et germansk retsprincip
- \*
- \* yde ng. ngt.
- \* i bytte for ngt.
- \* beskyttelse
- \*
- \* gunstbevisning velgerning
- \* tendere mod / have tilbøjelighed til at -
- \* førstefødselsret
- \* regel
- \* hvorved / -med
- \* tilfalde ng.
- \* generelt almindeligvis
- \* styre / regulere ngt.
- \* besidde ngt. i militær forpagtning
- \*
- \* forsørgelse af ng.
- \* gå på hæld
- \* skat
- \* ngt. er sat i stedet for ngt.
- \*
- \* følgelig
- \* vedtage / ikraftsætte ngt.
- \* vedtægt
- \* vilje
- \* tillade ng. at -
- \* helt aldeles
- \* testamente
- \* afskære ng. fra at -
- \* afskaffe ngt.
- \* sædvanlig skik og brug

## THOSE WHO FIGHT

<b>151</b> As the second Estate, the nobility <b>influenced</b> all <b>aspects</b> of medieval <b>culture</b> , politics, <b>economics</b> , and religion.	* influere på / påvirke ngt.	* aspekt / side ( af ngt. )
It is perhaps for this reason alone that European society from about the 12 <sup>th</sup> century on may be <b>termed</b> aristocratic.	* kultur	* økonomiske forhold
In fact, the aristocracy continued to <b>hold within</b> its <b>grasp</b> political and social power right <b>down to</b> the <b>eve</b> of the <i>Great War</i> of 1914 - 1918.	* betegne ngt. ngt.	
Although the nobility varied from place to place, and from time to time, a few general conclusions can be made.	* holde grebet om ngt.	
<b>10</b> The medieval nobility had special legal status.	* aften-, dagen før en helligdag umiddelbart før ngt.	
A man who was a member of the nobility was free in his <b>possessions</b> .	*	
His only <b>limitation concerned</b> his military <b>obligation to</b> his lord.	* ejendele / besiddelser	
As a member of the nobility, he had certain rights and <b>responsibilities</b> :	* begrænsning	* angå / vedrører >
he could <b>raise troops</b> and <b>command</b> them in the <b>field</b> ,	*	
<b>hold</b> his <b>own court of justice</b> , and <b>coin</b> his own money.	* ansvarsopgaver forpligtelser	
He was the lord of all those people who <b>settled on</b> his <b>land</b> .	* ~ indkalde * tropper * kommandere ng.	* i felten på slagmarken
<b>20</b> The medieval nobility was an <b>Estate of warriors</b> .	* have sin egen domstol	* udmønte > * penge
In <b>ancient</b> history, as in <b>Athens</b> and <b>Rome</b> , the <b>knight</b> was a noble of the second class who in military service had to <b>furnish</b> his own <b>mount</b> and <b>equipment</b> .	* bosætte sig / slå sig ned på ngt.	* landområde
In roman society, the knights ( Latin equites ) <b>ranked below</b> the <b>senatorial</b> class and <b>above</b> the ordinary <b>citizens</b> .	* krigerstand	
In medieval history, the knight was an armed and <b>mounted warrior</b> belonging to the nobility.	* oldtids- * Athen * Rom	* knægt ridder
The <b>incessant</b> private <b>warfare</b> that <b>characterized</b> medieval times <b>brought about</b> a permanent military class,	* skaffe ngt.	* ( ride-) hest
<b>30</b> and by the 10 <sup>th</sup> century the institution of <b>knighthood</b> was well established.	* rangere / befinde sig i rangorden under ng.	* udstyr
As a mounted soldier, the knight was <b>essentially</b> a military officer serving under a feudal superior.	* senator- * over ng.	* borger
With the growth of feudalism the <b>term</b> tended to <b>denote</b> the <b>holder</b> of not only a <b>position in the ranks</b> (pl.) of nobility but also in the ranks of landholders.	* bereden	
	* kriger	
	* uophørlig	* krigsførelse
	* frembringe ngt.	* karakterisere / kendetegne ngt.
	* ridderskab / -væsen	
	* i bund og grund i sit inderste væsen	
	* betegnelse	* betegne ng.
	* indehaver	* stilling i / indenfor ngt.
	*	* rangklasse / -orden

<b>152</b> Knighthood <b>implied</b> a number of obligations.	* medføre / indebære ngt.
The knight generally held his lands by military tenure.	*
<b>Thus</b> , knight service was a military service, usually 40 days	* således ngt. ⇔ er > ngt.
a year, normally expected by an overlord <b>in exchange for</b>	* i bytte / modydelse for ngt.
each fief held by a knight.	*
So the knights <b>incurred</b> all the <b>costs of</b> their services,	* indestå for ngt.      * omkostningerne ved ngt.
and life as a knight was <b>a risky business</b> .	* risikabel, ~ farlig      * ~ affære
All military service was <b>measured in terms</b> of knight service,	* ud-, måle ngt.      * periode
and a vassal might <b>owe</b> any number of knight services.	* skyld ( tjeneste )
<b>10</b> Although all nobles <b>of military age</b>	* ~ i den militærpligtig alder
were necessarily knights, knighthood had to be earned	*
through some <b>exploits</b> involving the use of arms.	* bedrift, dåd
When the sovereign <b>knighted</b> a man, he <b>conferred</b>	* slå / udnævne ng. til ridder      * overdrage tildele >
a <b>knighthood on</b> him.	* ridderskab
In the late Middle Ages the son of a noble would serve	*
first as a <b>page</b> , then as a <b>squire</b> , before being <b>made a knight</b> .	* page      * væbner      * gøre til ridder
So a knight would know the <b>ABC of</b> warfare.	* ABC ( ⇔ krigskunstens )
The sovereigns <b>dubbed</b> the knights.	* udnævne / navngive ng.
When a sovereign <b>dubbed</b> or <b>created</b> a squire a <b>knight</b> ,	* ... ng. til ngt.      * =
<b>20</b> he <b>stroke</b> him <b>lightly</b> with a <b>sword</b> in the <b>ceremony of</b>	* berøre ngt.      * let      * sværd      * ceremoni med at -
<b>conferring knighthood</b> .	* tildele >      * ridderskab
Knighthood was conferred by the overlord with	*
the <b>accolade</b> : a <b>blow</b> , usually with the flat of the sword,	* anerkendelse, hyldest      * slag
on the neck or shoulder .	* hædersbevisning, ridderslag
When a noble had <b>received knighthood</b> ,	* modtage >      * ridderskab
this was to be <b>accomplished</b> with a horse and a sword,	* fuldbyrde ngt.
the two <b>visible</b> signs of an aristocrat's nobility.	* synlig
He was also encouraged to <b>display</b> the <b>virtues of chivalry</b> ,	* udvise ngt.      * dyd      * riddervæsen / -stand
a <b>code of `conduct</b> created by the <b>clergy</b>	* kode ( for ) >      * opførsel      * præsteskabet
<b>30</b> to <b>curb</b> the <b>brutality</b> of this <b>order of knights</b> .	* dæmme op for / tøjle ngt.      * brutalitet      * ridderorden
Chivalry consists of the ideal <b>qualifications</b> of a knight	* kvalifikation
including <b>courtesy</b> ( <b>excellence of</b> manners and social	* høflighed      * fortræffelighed
conduct ), <b>generosity</b> , <b>valour</b> , and <b>dexterity in</b> using arms.	* gavmildhed      * taperhed      * behændighed /
	* rundhåndethed      mod      dygtighed i at ngt.
<b>In</b> the later <b>period of</b> feudalism, the ceremony was	* i >      * ( senere ) periode med ngt.
<b>preceded by</b> the religious ceremony of a <b>vigil before</b> an <b>altar</b> .	* være sat efter ngt.      * ( natte-) vågen      * foran      * alter
	( ngt. komme før ngt. ) / gudstjeneste
A follower of Christianity should not <b>expect praise for</b>	* forvente >      * ros for ngt.
their god deeds as in Christianity it's a <b>principle / maxim</b> that	* grundsætning ( at - )
<b>virtue is its own reward</b> .	* dyden har sin belønning i sig selv
It's a delusion when people <b>make a virtue of necessity</b> .	* gøre en dyd af nødvendigheden

<b>153</b> A knight fighting under another's <b>banner</b> was called	* banner		
a <b>knight bachelor</b> or <b>bachelor-at-arms</b> .	* "ungkarleridder"		
A knight fighting under his own banner was called	*		
a <b>knight banneret</b> .	* bannerherre		
Knights were ordinarily <b>accompanied in battle by</b> personal attendants ( squires and pages ) and by vassals and servants.	* ledsaget >	* i kamp	* af ng.
After an apprenticeship as page and squire,	*		
and <b>elevated / raised to honourable</b> military <b>rank</b> ,	* ophøjet til ngt.	* ærefuld hæderværdig	* rang
a knight <b>is bound to</b> <b>chivalric / chi` - //`chivalrous</b> conduct.	* være bundet af / forpligtet til ngt.	* ridderlig	* & galant
<b>10</b> After c. 1100 military tenure was generally subject to	*		
the law of primogeniture, which resulted in a class of <b>landless</b>	* jordløs		
knights.	*		
At the time of the <b>Crusades</b> those landless knights formed	* korstog		
the great military orders of knighthood, which were religious	*		
as well as military bodies.	*		
A knight might be a man <b>upon</b> whom certain <b>nonhereditary</b>	* ~ til ( hvem )		* ikke arvelig
<b>dignity</b> corresponding to that of a knight <b>of noble birth</b> ,	* værdighed	* adelig af >	* fødsel
<b>is conferred</b> by a sovereign because of personal <b>merits</b>	* være overdraget		* bedrift
or for services rendered to the country.	*		
<b>20</b> <b>Secular</b> orders, <b>patterned loosely on</b> the religious ones,	* sekulær	* give ngt. mønster efter ngt.	* løseligt
but not <b>limited to</b> landless knights, also <b>grew up, principally</b>	* begrænset til ng.	* vokse op / frem	* hovedsagligt
as <b>honorary establishments</b> by the king or great nobles.	* ærebetinget		* installering ( & stand af hædrede personer )
So both a man of noble birth and a member of	*		
<b>the nonnobility</b> might be knighted by a sovereign.	* ikke adelsstand		
When a young member of the nobility finally <b>came into</b>	* komme i >		
<b>possession</b> of his property, he <b>acquired authority over</b> land	* besiddelse af ngt.	* opnå autoritet over ngt.	
and people.	*		
His social function was to protect <b>the weak</b> and the poor.	* de svage		
The nobility, however, rarely lived up to this standard.	*		
<b>30</b> Although <b>it all depends on how you look at it</b> ,	* ~ det sete afhænger af øjnene der ser det		
the <b>nobility</b> of many the nobility's intentions still seems to be	* ædelhed af ngt.		
<b>highly doubtful / dubious / questionable / suspect</b> .	* højst	* tvivlsom / & dubiøs / tvivlsom / & mistænkelig	
The reason for this may be that the nobility wanted	*		
immediate <b>gratification</b> .	* tilfredsstillelse fornøjelse, glæde		
The problem was, there were many times	*		
when the nobility were not <b>involved in warfare</b>	* være indblandet i >		* krig >
either <b>with foreign</b> enemies or rival lords.	* med ng.		* udenlandsk
A non- <b>acquisitive</b> nobleman was regarded an <b>aberration -</b>	* besidderisk		* abnormalitet, afvigelse
an <b>aberrant</b> individual.	* afvigende, unormalt ( individ )		

<b>154 In other words, in times of peace</b> , the nobility needed an <b>outlet</b> for their <b>ambitions</b> and <b>warlike aggression</b> .	* med andre ord	* ~ i fredstid
This came with their participation in the medieval <b>tournament</b> ; a contest or <b>martial</b> sport in which two <b>opposing</b> parties of mounted and <b>armoured combatants</b> <small>[`kámbêténts]</small> <b>fought</b> for a <b>prestigious</b> prize, with <b>blunt</b> / <b>blunted weapons</b> and <b>in accordance with</b> certain rules.	* afløb * målbevidsthed * krigsmæssig * & angrebslyst for ngt. ærgerriged krigerisk	
The best-known example was the <b>joust</b> .	* turnering	* krigs-
When the knights <b>jousted</b> , the <b>mounted</b> combatants <b>10 charged</b> each other with <b>lances</b> .	* modsat stridende * kæmpe for ngt. * i overensstemmelse med ngt.	* pansret * kombattant kampdeltager * (gjort) sløv * våben / -givende, anset / stump
The tournaments were a way of <b>gaining prestige</b> so knights and other members of noble families were able to <b>enhance</b> their <b>prestige through</b> winning a tournament.	* lancedyst * lancedyste	* bereden (kombattant)
Besides the personal <b>prestige of</b> winning a tournament there was <b>considerable</b> social <b>prestige attached to</b> winning a tournament.	* angribe / gå løs på ng. * opnå ngt.	* lance * & anseelse
Especially the monarchs held <b>prestige</b> tournaments; festivals at which the combatants participated in the most <b>prestigious</b> turnaments.	* forbedre / -høje / -skønne / -stærke / -øge ngt. * ... ved at -	* ... gennem
<b>20</b> An aristocrat's <b>identification with</b> the nobility came from his ability as a warrior and also with his complete <b>jurisdiction</b> over his property and subordinate.	* betragtelig * prestige * forbundet med at -	
Such jurisdiction allowed him to <b>gratify</b> his <b>desires</b> for <b>lavish living</b> .	* prestige (kun attr.) * fest / -ival * prestigefyldt	
Since the status and prestige of the medieval noble <b>depended on</b> his household, it seems obvious that he would <b>make</b> every <b>attempt to</b> increase the number of <b>retainers</b> , or vassals, he could <b>maintain</b> .	* identification / lighed med ng. * retsmyndighed over ng. / ngt.	
His <b>prestigious</b> clothes <b>grew</b> more elegant, <b>30</b> his castle larger, his food and table more <b>ornate</b> .	* tilfredsstille * overdådig ødsel, flot	* begær ønske * levevis
Having to look after his own land, the noble had to appoint wise <b>stewards</b> who could <b>watch</b> his estate, <b>enhance</b> his castle, <b>collect direct</b> and <b>indirect taxes</b> <small>dĩ`rekt / dai` - indĩ`rekt</small> as well as <b>rent</b> , while he himself made every effort to <b>obtain</b> more status by fighting and <b>serving</b> the <b>court</b> of his lord.	* afhænge af ngt. * gøre (ethvert) forsøg på at - * opretholde / forsørge ng. * prestigefyldt	* medlem af > en stormands følge * blive ngt.
And <b>since</b> a great lord's estates were usually <b>scattered</b> <b>over</b> wide area, he <b>was</b> constantly <b>on the move</b> .	* overdådigt / rigt udsmykket * godsforvalter * holde øje med / passe ngt. * forbedre ngt. * inddrive * direkte * in- * skat * leje * opnå / skaffe sig ngt. * tjene > * hof * siden, fordi, idet * spredt > * over ngt. * være på farten	

**155** Although the Church **condemned** fighting and killing, it was not able to stop the violence so characteristic of the medieval nobility.

As a result the nobility of Europe was a constant **thorn in the side / flesh for** nearly all European monarchs.

From the 13th century on, the medieval kings began to **draw upon** the **middle classes** in order to create a **bureaucracy** that would eventually **lay** the **foundation for royal absolutism** of the 16th and 17th centuries.

**10** **Lastly**, it was the Holy Crusades that managed to give the European nobility a chance to **dedicate** themselves to their lords by **conducting missions** to **rid** the Holy Land of the **infidels**.  
kên`dûkting

European monarchs were more than happy to see their nobility **go off** and fight.

On the one hand, the crusades **served as a safety valve**, and on the other ( hand ), preserved the prestigious status of the monarchies themselves.

**Crusading** was considered a **heroic deed / exploit**.

**20** As **taking part in** a **crusade** was regarded as a Christian **deed** of **valour**, people who **went on** a **Crusade**, had a high hopes that their **brave deeds, daring exploits** and **sacrifices** would **open doors / the way for** salvation / to ( **go to** ) Heaven / Paradise

**Purgatory** is a place or state in which the souls of dead  
pê~gêtri  
people suffer for the bad things they did when they were living so that they can become pure enough to go heaven.

So people of all classes **engaged in** a **crusade**.

**Going on** a **crusade** was a **perilous enterprise**.

**30** The **crusaders** first had a long and **enervating journey** and a lot of **strenuous travel(ing)** ahead of them before they eventually reached Palestine.

**Engaged in battle**, many crusaders were killed or wounded, and the **survivors** had a long and dangerous way home.

So the crusaders spent many years **away from home**, and a lot them never returned.

It may take a long time for a **wound** to **heal**, and after

a **medical ( examination )**, those day's **medical treatment(s)** tended to kill people rather than **healing** them.

\* fordømme ngt.

\*

\*

\* torn ( torn i øjet på )

\* <

\*

\* trække på /  
benytte sig af ng.

\* middelklasse

\* bureaukrati  
kontor- og embedsmandsvælde

\* skabe grundlaget for ngt.

\* royal  
kongelig

\* enevælde

\* til sidst / slut  
endelig

\* tilegne sig /  
vie hele sin opmærksomhed til ng.

\* udføre /  
lede ngt.

\* mission, hverv  
ærinde

\* befri ngt. for ng.

\* vantro  
hedning

\*

\* tage af sted

\* sikkerhed -

\* ventil

\*

\*

\* være på korstog

\* heltagtig  
helte-

\* gerning  
dåd

\* bedrift  
dåd

\* deltage i et >

\* korstog

\* gerning  
~ heltegerning

\* mod

\* tage >

\* på ( et ) ...

\* modig

\* gerning

\* dristig

\* bedrift

\* opofrelse

\* åbne døren til / berede vejen for ngt.

\* til ( at ) ngt.

\* skærsilden  
( renselse )

\*

\*

\* deltage i >

\* korstog

\* drage / tage på ...

\* farefuld

\* foretagende

\* korsfarer

\* enerverende  
udmattende

\* rejse

\* anstrengende  
strabadserende

\* rejsen

\*

\* involveret / ~ travlt optaget i >

\* kamp

\* overlevende

\* & hjemmefra

\*

\* sår >

\* heles

\* lægeundersøgelse  
medicinsk- / læge ( undersøgelse )

\* = \* behandling (-er)

\* helbrede ng.

## THOSE WHO WORK

<b>156</b> A serf is a person in a <b>condition</b> of <b>servitude</b> , <b>required</b> to render services to his lord, <b>commonly attached to</b> the lord's <b>land</b> and transferred with it from one owner to another.	* i en omstændighed af > * slaveri * påbyde ng. at - * almindeligvis * bundet til > * land (-område )
<b>Serfdom</b> was known in the <b>Hellenistic civilization</b> .	* livegenskab * hellenistisk * civilisation
In the <b>Roman Empire</b> economic <b>maladjustment led to</b> the appearance of a <b>servile class</b> , the <b>coloni</b> .	* Romerriget * mistilpasning * lede til ng. * slaveklasse * koloni
In the Middle Ages, serfdom developed in France, Italy, and Spain, later <b>spread to</b> Germany, and in the 15th century was <b>carried to</b> Slavic countries.	* * sprede sig til ( sted ) * bragt til ( sted )
<b>10</b> By the 11th and 12th century, the <b>vast majority</b> of European men and women were <b>peasants</b> who were working on the land of their lords.	* langt overvejende flertal ( * enorm * majoritet ) * småbonde landarbejder
We know very little about these people <b>for</b> the simple <b>fact</b> <b>that</b> neither <b>the clergy</b> nor <b>the laity</b> including the nobility kept <b>written records about</b> them.	* af den ( simple ) grund > * at - * præsteskabet * lægfolket * ( ned-) skreven * beretning > * om ng.
When the <b>peasantry</b> of Europa was <b>mentioned</b> , it was usually <b>in relation to</b> the <b>obligations</b> they <b>owed</b> their superiors.	* småbonde og landarbejderklasse * nævne ng. * i relation til / forbindelse med > * forpligtelse * skyldte ng. <
In the centuries that followed the collapse of the Roman <b>20</b> Empire, the development <b>followed a line</b> separating slave and serf.	* * følge > * udviklingslinje
Of course, both slaves and serfs lacked freedom and were subject to the will of the lord.	* *
Throughout the long history of medieval serfdom, the serf was required to <b>perform</b> labour <b>services</b> for his lord.	* * udføre > * ( arbejds-) opgaver
Although the number of days <b>devoted to working</b> the lord's land varied from place to place, it was usually three days a week, except at <b>harvest ( time )</b> , when the lord would expect even more.	* helliget til ng. * bearbejde ng. * * høst
<b>30</b> Taught <b>servility</b> , serfs were supposed to be <b>servile</b> , and <b>exhibit a servile conduct</b> , and furthermore, they were tied to the land and their <b>condition</b> was hereditary.	* -hed / -itet * servil, tjenstvillig, følgagtig * udvise > * = * opførsel * tilstand, samfundsstilling
In a society where social rank <b>took precedence over</b> skill and virtue, the serfs had to accept that the needs and wishes of their lords always <b>took precedence over</b> their own needs and wishes	* gå forud / have forrang for ng. * * =
The <b>reasoning</b> of the aristocracy was <b>based on</b> the <b>premise / premiss that</b> they acted on God's will.	* tankegang * basere ng. på > * præmis, antagelse at -



<b>157</b> Serfdom developed separately in England where the	*		
serfs were more commonly <b>referred to</b> as <b>villeins</b> ( <b>villains</b> ).	* referere til / omtale som ngt.		* livegen hovbonde
Serfdom in England, so called <b>villeinage</b> ( <b>villa(i)nage</b> )	* livegenskab		
became widespread by the end of the 10th century.	* hoveri		
A villein was a member of a class of partially free persons	*		
who were serfs <b>with respect to</b> their lord but had the rights	* med hensyn / i henseende til / hvad angår ng.		
and privileges of freemen <b>in respect of</b> others.	* =		
Most medieval European peasants lived on vast estates	*		
called manors ( from latin, meaning dwelling or residence ).	*		
<b>10</b> The medieval manor varied in <b>size</b> from as little as	* størrelse		
100 <b>acres</b> ( 1 acre = 0.4 ha ) to more than 1000.	* acre		
A manor could <b>include</b> a village, a few villages,	* inkludere / indbefatte ( landsby )		
or <b>none</b> at all.	* ingen		
The land of the manor was divided into two parts:	*		
the demesne was the lord's land worked by the peasants,	*		
and the other part was held by the peasants as tenants	*		
<b>in common</b> .	* i fællesskab		
Their <b>plot</b> was usually much larger <b>based on</b> the <b>condition</b>	* jordstykke, grund * baseret på > * den betingelse >		
<b>that</b> they cultivate the lord's demesne before their own.	parcel, havelod		
<b>20</b> The land itself was divided into long strips and it was	* at -		
<b>entirely</b> possible that one serf would have to work in	*		
a number of strips spread out across the manor.	* aldeles ( muligt )		
Furthermore, the medieval estate required cooperation	*		
among all serfs since horses, <b>oxen</b> and <b>ploughs</b> E/A <b>plows</b>	* okser		* plov
were few.	*		
( After a plough has been used to <b>plough</b> / <b>plow</b> ( the land ),	* pløje ( ngt.)		
a farmer uses a <b>harrow</b> to <b>harrow</b> the field before <b>planting</b> it.	* harve	* harve ngt.	* tilplante / -så ngt.
<b>30</b> Medieval manors also had <b>tracts</b> of <b>forest</b> as well as open	* strækning		* skov
<b>meadows</b> for the <b>grazing</b> of <b>cattle</b> and <b>sheep</b> .	egn, område		
It was from the forest and meadows that the serf could	* eng	* græsse	* kvæg
practice <b>gleaning</b> - the <b>gathering</b> of <b>firewood</b> or <b>thatch</b> ,	* græsmark		* får
<b>fishing</b> and <b>hunting</b> - in order to <b>subsidize</b>	* sankning	* indsamling	* brænde
the rather <b>meagre</b> E/A <b>meager</b> diet of his family.	* fiske	* gå på jagt	* tækkemateriale / -halm
( A house may be <b>provided with</b> (a) <b>thatch</b> . )	* sparsom og sølle		* understøtte / give tilskud til ngt.
It ought to be clear that life on the medieval manor was	* ( være ) forsynet med >		* stråetække ( stråtag )
simple and <b>uncomplicated</b> .	*		
( Some people <b>plough</b> a <b>lonely</b> / their <b>own furrow</b> . )	* ukompliceret		
	* pløje >	* en ensom / sin egen >	* fure
			~ køre sit eget løb



**159** At (the) **service**, the village priest also read messages from secular and Church authorities.

Popular medieval religion was **shot through with rituals** and **symbolism**; for instance, before **slicing** bread a woman would **tap** the sign of the cross **on** it with her knife.

The **entire calendar** was created **with reference to** the many **Holy Days**.

Everyone participated in the village **processions**.

But what did Christianity mean to the medieval peasant ?

**10** For the most part, they accepted what their family, and **custom**, and the village priest had told them.

Although the **mass** was in Latin, the priest delivered **sermons**, usually on the Gospel, in the **vernacular**.

**Paintings** and **stained-glass windows** on the walls of the church offered the meaning of **biblical stories**.

Peasants had a strong sense of the existence of God, believing that God was directly involved in human affairs and could reward the **virtuous** people.

They believed that God **punished** men and women **for**

**20** their sins with **disease**, **plagues**, **poor harvest**, and war.

( The **outlook for sufferers from plague** was **bleak**, and **ignorance** of **hygiene aided** diseases in **spreading**,  
`haidʃi~n  
as well as all kinds of **vermin** ( pl.) might **spread** disease. )

The devil seemed to be everywhere, forcing people to **commit** evil deeds and thoughts.

Men and women prayed to god, **spoke** the **Creed** **confessed** their **sins** to the priest, and **received** the **Sacrament** of the **Eucharist** on **Holy Days**.

In general, the life of men and women who **lived off** the **land**

**30** was short and hard.

New experiences were often a **baptism of / by fire**, and people usually had their **baptism of fire** at an **early age**.

But life in the village community did **entail** cooperation and the values of a simple life.

Although these people did not have the luxuries which the 21st century has **bequeathed** some people today,  
bi'kwi~dd / -#t  
they did have a life that was regular and **shot through with** **singularity** of **purpose**.

\* ved gudstjenesten

\*

\* ~ gennemsyret / fuld af ngt.

\* ritual

\* symbolisme \* ( som tilfælde ) \* ~ skære ngt. i skiver  
~ for eksempel

\* ( forsigtigt ) banke / slå ( korsets tegn ) på ngt.

\* hele \* kalender \* med forbindelse til ngt.  
fulde  
\* hellig \* dag

\* procession  
optog

\*

\*

\* ~ skik og brug

\* messe

\* prædiken \* folkesprog

\* maleri \* glasmaleri / -mosaik- \* vindue

\* bibelsk ...  
bibelhistorie

\*

\*

\* anstændig, dydig, retskaffen

\* straffe ng. for ngt.

\* sygdom \* plage \* dårlig \* høst  
epidemi ussel

\* udsigt for > \* ng. der lider af ngt. \* pest \* dyster

\* ukend- \* hygiejne \* hjælpe ( sygdomme ) \* spredes  
skab til > med at - sprede sig  
\* skadedyr \* sprede ( sygdom )

\*

\* begå ( onde gerninger ) / gøre sig ( ... tanker )

\* fremsige > \* trosbekendelsen

\* bekende / indrømme / tilstå > \* synd \* til ng.

\* modtage > \* sakramentet \* nadver \* hellig dag  
( brød & vin )

\* ~ leve af det jorden kan yde

\*

\* ~ ilddåb

\* = \* i en tidlig alder

\* medføre / nødvendiggøre ngt.

\*

\*

\* efterlade ng. ngt. / lade ngt. gå i arv til ng.  
( testamentere ng. ngt. )

\* være præget af ngt.

\* enkelthed \* ( med hensyn til ) formål

**160** By the 12th century in England, it was indeed

**common for** some serfs **to be made free.**

With the **rise of towns**, the **increased productivity** of the land, long-distance trade, and the development of a money economy, more and more serfs managed to find themselves in a condition of freedom.

What this really meant was that the peasants could now **rent** his land **from** the lord **for a certain period of time.**

Equally important, **with the passage of time** many serfs **no longer** owed their lords a labour obligation, but rather various direct and indirect taxes on almost all **tasks** on the medieval manor.

Because many landlords had lost their serfs, the lords **relaxed ancient obligations** and **duties.**

In Western Europe the breakdown of the manorial system allowed peasants to obtain more freedom in the 14th and 15th century.

Serfdom disappeared in England before the end of the Middle Ages.

**20** While the majority of peasants were serfs during the Middle Ages, free peasants continued to exist and in some regions whole villages did not come under the rule of a lord.

A peasant may **obtain** and **own** the **leasehold of** a farm.

As a **lessee**, he **leases / rents** a piece of land **from** a landowner who, as a **lessor** and according to a **lease**, **leases / rents ( out ) leasehold land to a leaseholder (eE).**

The **freeholders** owned a **freehold**, an estate in land inherited or held for life.

**Freehold** is a form of **tenure** by which an estate is held **30 for life** or in **fee simple** ( an estate of inheritance, absolute and without **limitation to** any particular class of **heirs** ) or **fee tail** ( limited to a particular class of heirs ) or

In England the **gentry** was the class of freeholders under the nobility.

A **yeoman** was one of the **yeomanry**: one of the class of **lesser** freeholders below the gentry, who cultivated his own land.

\* almindeligt >

\* for ng./ ngt. at -

\* gøre ng. fri

\* opståen, opvækst

\* øget

\* produktivitet

\*

\*

\*

\*

\* leje ngt. af ng.

\* for >

\* bestemt

\* tidsperiode

\* i tidens løb

\*

\* arbejdsopgave, hverv

\*

\*

\* lempe >

\* ældgamle

\* forpligtelser

\* pligter, afgifter

\*

\*

\*

\*

\*

\*

\*

\*

\* skaffe sig >

\* eje >

\* forpagtning / lejemål af ngt.

\* lejer, forpagter

\* forpagte / leje ngt. af ng.

\* udlejer

\* lejekontrakt

\* udleje ngt.

\* forpagtnings- ( jord )

\* forpagter lejer

\* selvejer  
odelsbonde

\* selvejerejendom

\*

\* selveje

\* besiddelse

\* for livstid

\* selveje  
fri ejendom  
\* arving

\* begrænsning for ng.

\* fideikommis  
stamgods

\* lavadlen

\*

\* selvejerbonde

\* selvejerstand

\* mindre

\*

## THOSE WHO PRAY

**161** At the top of medieval society was the first Estate,  
the clergy, those who pray.

The Church was also **influential in shaping** feudalism.

Although the **organization of the Church** was not feudal  
**in character**, its hierarchy somewhat **paralleled** the feudal  
hierarchy.

The Church owned much land, held by **monasteries**,  
by church **dignitaries**, and by the churches themselves.

Most of this land, given by nobles as a **bequest** or gift,

**10** carried feudal **obligations**.

Thus **clerical land**, like **lay land**, **assumed** a feudal **aspect**,  
and the clergy became participants in the **temporal** feudal  
system.

Many **bishops** were much like **lay seigniors**.

This feudal **connection** between church and state  
gave rise to the **controversy over lay investiture**.

It was the village priest who had to **oversee** the **spiritual life**  
of his **flock** on the medieval manor.

His duties were to **administer** the necessary sacraments

**20** with **regularity** and **consistency**.

He was also important to **absolve** men and woman

**of / from** their sins for the act of **confession**.

He was also, as we have already seen, the usual source  
of secular and **ecclesiastical pronouncements**.

His role, then, in the medieval village was **extraordinary**.

Of course, not all village priests were as dedicated to

the **holiness** of their **flock** as he should be.

However, it was the village priest **with** whom medieval men  
and women **identified** the Church, its teachings and authority.

**30** Although **monasticism** was firmly **entrenched** in  
medieval society by the time of **Charlemagne** ( Charles

the Great, A.D. 742-814, king of the Franks 768-814,

as Charles I, Emperor of the Holy Roman Empire 800-814 )

by the 11<sup>th</sup> and 12<sup>th</sup> century, **monks** had become more visible

members of town and village **alike**.

- \* ( stærkt ) medvirkende til at -
- \* organisation af >
- \* af karakter i sin art
- \* munkekloster
- \* dignitar, fornem ... / rangsperson
- \* arv testamentarisk gave
- \* indbefatte >
- \* gejstlig \* land \* læg- \* = \* antage ngt. \* fremtoning karakter
- \* jord mands
- \* timelig verdslig
- \* biskop
- \* læg
- \* herre / -mand
- \* forbindelse sammenhæng
- \* kontrovers / strid \* lægmands \* investitur
- \* uenighed om ngt. embedsindsættelse
- \* føre tilsyn med ng&t. \* åndelig \* liv
- \* flok menighed
- \* administrere / forvalte ngt.
- \* regelmæssighed
- \* konsistens, sammenhæng overensstemmelse
- \* frikende ng. / give ng. syndsforladelse >
- \* for ngt.
- \* tilståelse, indrømmelse tros-, bekendelse, skrifte, -mål
- \* gejstlig
- \* erklæring, udtagelse domsafsigelse
- \* usædvanlig, særegen
- \* hellighed
- \* flok menighed
- \* >
- \* identificere ngt. med ngt. gen-, kende ngt. gennem ngt.
- \* kloster- / grund- / rodfæste, forankre ( & indgroet )
- \* munkevæsen
- \* munk
- \* både, ens, på samme måde i samme grad

162 The monasteries <b>were dedicated to prayer</b>	* være helliget / beregnet til ( at ) ngt.	* bøn
and <b>supplying</b> the evil Europe <b>with</b> the ideal of a Christian civilization.	* forsyne ng. med ngt.	
	*	
Monasteries also produced an educated <b>elite</b> that were	* elite	
<b>utilized</b> in service to lords and kings.	* anvende / benytte / udnytte ng.	
The monks also kept alive classical culture and <b>introduced</b>	* introducere / fremføre ngt.	
the <b>techniques</b> of <b>efficient</b> and <b>profitable</b> land	* teknik, frem- * effektiv, ydedygtig * profitabel, lønsom gangsmåde virkningdfuld, dygtig gavnlig, nyttig	
<b>management</b> .	* ledelse, håndtering behandling	
By the 11 <sup>th</sup> and 12 <sup>th</sup> century, the original mission of	*	
the <b>monastic</b> movement had been altered to <b>accommodate</b>	* kloster- * forsyne ng. >	
<b>10</b> the children of the nobility <b>with</b> an honourable	* munke- med ngt.	
and <b>aristocratic</b> life.	* overklassepræget	
Such a life also <b>held out</b> the <b>possibility for / of</b>	* frembyde > * muligheden for / af ngt.	
an <b>ecclesiastical</b> career.	* gejstlig	
By the 13 <sup>th</sup> century the older <b>Benedictine</b> monasteries had	* benedektiner	
to <b>compete with</b> new orders such as the <b>Dominicans</b>	* konkurrere / kappes med ng. * dominikaner	
and <b>Franciscans</b> .	* fransiskaner	
As a result, more monks had to be <b>recruited from</b>	* rekruttere / hverve / skaffe ng. fra ngt.	
the middle classes who <b>inhabited</b> the areas near an <b>abbey</b> .	* bebo ngt. * abbedi kloster, -kirke	
As medieval Europe <b>prospered</b> during the 12 <sup>th</sup> century	* have fremgang blomstre	
<b>20</b> and after, there was a <b>marked</b> increase in the number of	* markant, udpræget, tydelig	
cities and large towns.	*	
In these <b>sorts of</b> places one could see <b>first (-) `hand /</b>	* slags ( steder ) * på første hånd	
<b>at first hand</b> the <b>representatives of</b> the Church.	* = * representant for ngt.	
What the townspeople began to <b>observe</b> was clergy who	* observere / lægge mærke til ngt.	
seemed more willing to live the life of European <b>prince</b> or	* prins, fyrste	
noble than someone whose <b>sole duty</b> was the <b>spiritual</b>	* åndelig	
<b>guidance of the people</b> .	* vejledning af ng. * folket	
The Church, it was commonly believed, seemed to be	*	
inhabited by people who were interested only in	*	
<b>30 aggrandizement of</b> their wealth, power and prestige.	* forøgelse / udvidelse / forherligelse af > * rigdom	
The <b>stage</b> seemed to be <b>set</b> for the <b>rise in heresy of</b>	* scene * sat for > * stigning i > * kætteri	
the 12 <sup>th</sup> century and after.	*	
The <b>Inquisition</b> was established in the 13 <sup>th</sup> century	* Inkvisitionen	
by the Roman Catholic Church chiefly to <b>combat</b> and <b>punish</b>	* bekæmpe > * straffe >	
<b>heresy / heresies</b> and <b>heretics</b> within the Christian faith.	* kætteri / kætterier, ~ afvigende tiltag * kættere afvigere	
<b>Punishable by / with { death / the death penalty,</b>	* strafbart med > * døden / dødsstraf	
heresy might be <b>punished by / with { - = - .</b>	* straffet med > * - = -	

163 Most medieval men and women **regarded** their

Christianity **with seriousness** and **genuine faith**.

If monks, and bishops, and other members of the clergy, were engaged in acts of holiness, then why did it seem that they were living a life of luxury and **opulence** ?

These were questions that would become **of utmost importance** in the following centuries leading up to the Protestant Reformation which had for its **object to reform** the **Roman Catholic Church** and which led to the establishment of the **Protestant Churches**.

\*

\*

### THE MEDIEVAL WORLD VIEW

For most part, it can be said that great **thinkers** had led two lives.

Their first life occurs while they are busy at work in their **earthly garden**.

But there is also a second life which **begins** the moment their life **ceases** and continues as long as their ideas, **20 concepts** and **conceptions** remain powerful.

In the history of the western intellectual tradition - a **tradition reaching back to** the pre-Socratic philosophers of **Ionia** – there have always been great thinkers who have **attempted to** explain the nature and **scope** of human knowledge.

**Towards** the **end** of the 18th **century**, a German **idealist** philosopher published a number of important treatises – treatises which he called **critiques**.

The **Critique of Practical Reason**, The Critique of **Pure** Reason and The Critique of Judgement **30** were the work of *Emmanuel Kant* ( 1724 - 1804 ).

The great question which **plagued** Kant, as well as all philosophers, is this: what is knowledge ?

This is an **epistemological** question and is often joined by other questions: what is **reality** ? what is illusion ? what can we know ? what does it mean to know something ?

\* betragte ngt. >

\* med >

\*

\*

\* rigdom, overdådighed / -flod

\* af yderste >

\* vigtighed

\* formål / hensigt at -

\* reformere / omforme ngt.

\* protestantisk

\* seriøsitet  
alvor

\* ægte

\* tiltro

\* Romersk katolske Kirke

\* verdensanskuelse

\* tænker

\*

\*

\* jordisk

\* have

\* begynde

\* ophøre

\* begreb

\* & ide, udtænkning  
forestilling, opfattelse

\* tradition >

\* række tilbage til ngt.

\* det Ioniske rige  
( i præhistorisk Grækenland )

\* forsøge

\* omfanget af / rammerne for ngt.

\* henimod >

\* slutning af >

\* århundrede

\* idealist

\* kritik ( kritisk skrift / ide )

\* ... af ngt.

\* ren

\*

\* plage ng.

\*

\* erkendelsesmæssig

\* realitet  
virkelighed

\*

**164** In the **introduction** to the first **edition** of his *Critique of Pure Reason* ( 1781 ) Kant **began with** the following words:

**There can be no doubt** ( **that** ) all our knowledge

**begins with** experience.

This, of course, is the credo of the **empiricist**.

*John Locke* ( 1632 - 1704 ) was an empiricist.

So too were **Galileo** (1564-1642), and Isac Newton (1642-1727).

In fact, most **scientists** are empiricists by nature.

**10** It was Locke who, in the late 17<sup>th</sup> century, **argued that**

the human mind was a **tabula rasa**, a **blank slate** upon which experience **records itself** as knowledge.

One of the first empiricists was `Aristotle (348-322 **BC**).

In fact, it's safe to say that it was Aristotle who made

the **empirical** point of view a **reality**.

`**Aristotle** was the teacher of **Alexander the Great**.

Aristotle had also been the pupil of **Plato** ( c. 427- 347 BC) who was, in turn, the student of **Socrates** (c. 469-399 BC).

Plato, simply **stated**, believed that **universal** ideas of things,

**20** like truth, beauty and justice, have an **objective** **a priori** existence of their own.

What this means is that these things existed whether man

**perceived / apprehended** them or not.

They had an independent reality which Plato believed men

could become to **grasp** as knowledge.

These ideas exist **a priori**, that is, they exists **prior to** experience and, hence, **transcend** experience.

For Plato, our senses are deceptive, and what we experience in our daily lives is not reality, but the **shadow** of reality.

**30** This is one of the messages of Plato's **Republic**, specially " The **Allegory Of The Cave** ".

Plato's doctrine of the Forms ( Ideas or **Universals** )

**concerns** itself **with innate** ideas – ideas which exist before men have experience of them.

This **philosophical** school has come to be known as **rationalism**, the belief that all opinions, behaviour etc. should be based on reason ( **rational thought** ) rather than on emotions or religious beliefs.

\* i > \* introduktion / indledning til ( et skrift ) \* tryk udgave

\* ng. begynde med ngt.

\* ~ der kan ikke herske nogen tvivl om at -

\* ngt. begynde med ngt.

\* erfaringsfilosof

\*

\* Galilei

\*

\* videnskabsmand

\* hævde at -

\* = ( latin ) \* tom blank \* skifer, -plade tavle

\* indprente sig som ngt.

( registrere / optegne )

\* ( Before Christ ) før Kristus

\*

\* empirisk erfaringsmæssig

\* realitet

\* Aristoteles

\* Alexander den Store

\* Platon

\* = circa [ `sê~kê ]

\* Sokrates

\* angivet

\* universal / -sel ~ alt gældende

\* objektiv

saglig

\* = ( ikke erfaringsbestemt )

\*

\* opfatte / erkende forstå / indse ngt.

\* begribe / fatte ngt.

\*

\* begribe / fatte ngt. som ngt.

\* =

\* forud for ngt.

\* transcendere / overskride / bevæge sig / være hinsides ngt.

\* Platon

\* afskygning af ngt.

\* Republik

\* allegori, lignelse

\* hule

\* & almenbegreb

\* beskæftige sig med ngt.

\* medfødt naturgiven

\*

\* filosofisk

\* rationalisme fornuftsfilosofi / -erkendelse

\* fornuftsbaseret

\* tankegang

\*





<b>166</b> The Church Fathers – <i>Origen</i> (185 – 254), <i>St Jerome</i> (c.342 – 420), and <i>St Augustine</i> (354 – 430) – sought to explain the <b>Holy Writ</b> through <b>Revelation</b> and Faith alone.	*		
But, some Church Fathers soon realized that they needed the classical authors to <b>aid</b> them <b>in / with</b> ( their ) writing.	*		
So, men like Plato or <i>Cicero</i> (106 – 43 BC) were <b>thorns</b> in the <b>side of</b> Christian thinkers like Jerome and Augustine.	* den hellige skrift ( dokument m. retslig kendelse )		* åbenbaring
Aquinas recognized this and <b>sought reconciliation</b> .	* hjælpe / bistå ng. med ( at ) ng.		
But instead of <b>uniting</b> two philosophical traditions as Kant <b>10</b> was to do in the 1780s, Aquinas <b>joined</b> the two methods.	* torn >		
Reason was no longer <b>conceived of as</b> the <b>nemesis</b> of <b>Faith</b> .	* i siden på ng.		
Neither was Philosophy the enemy of Theology.	* søge >		* forsoning
Instead, Aquinas joined the two by claiming that both were <b>paths to a single truth</b> : ' God exists.'	* forene ng.		
Hopefully, this should <b>ring a few bells</b> for this is very similar to what Abelard had done a century earlier.	* forbinde ng. og ng.		
Before we <b>turn to</b> the synthesis of Aquinas, it is necessary to examine the historical <b>context from</b> which this synthesis <b>20</b> <b>appeared</b> .	* opfatte ng. som ng.		* modstander fjende
By the end of the 12 <sup>th</sup> century there were signs of a widespread <b>awakening</b> and progress <b>felt</b> across Europe.	* den rette tro		
For instance, the lords of the manor were learning to make better use of their serfs.	*		
They did this by <b>emancipating</b> them and so from this point on the <b>serfs</b> were now called <b>peasants</b> .	* vej til >	* eneste	* sandhed
Peasants were no longer tied to the land by labour obligations owed to the lord.	* få en klokke til at ringe		
Now, they paid rent instead.	*		
<b>30</b> Meanwhile, <b>suburbs</b> began to appear around older cities and hundreds of new villages <b>sprang into being</b> .	* vende sig mod ( et emne )		
<b>Overall</b> , European society was becoming more <b>diversified</b> and life was beginning to <b>hold</b> more <b>comforts</b> (pl.).	* kontekst sammenhæng		* fra ng.
And <b>in terms of</b> intellectual history, this period has come to be characterized as the 12 <sup>th</sup> Century Renaissance.	* opstå <		
	*		
	* en >	* vidtrækkende udbredt	* opvågning fornemme ng.
	*		
	* frigøre ng.		
	* livegne		* bonde
	*		
	*		
	*		
	* forstad		
	* pludselig opstå ( sprang )		
	* overalt	* variere, blive / gøre > afvekslende / forskelligartet	
	* indeholde >	* bekvemmeligheder	
	* i ( historiske ) vendinger		
	*		

**167** All across northern Europe and England, peasants were **freed from** labour **obligations** and were now offered land – for rent – **under** very **attractive terms**.

Peasants **expanded into** new territories.

They **levelled** forest(s) and drained **bog(s)**, **marsh (-es)**, and **swamp(s)** wherever they went.

The peasants also had better tools **at** their **disposal**.

The plough was now in general use, **wind mills** were now more common and the land seemed to be yielding more.

**10** Despite numerous **setbacks**, the peasantry of northern Europe slowly **recognized that** a three **field system** of crop **rotation** would yield more than the older two field system.

The **bottom line** is **that** peasants were better **fed**, less **afraid of famine** and could now **rear** / **raise** more **children** because the land could **support** / **sustain** a larger, or at least growing **population**.

And the peasants did rear / raise more children for one of the signs of increased economic prosperity was at the same time an **increase** in the population.

**20** In areas where peasants normally congregated, villages became towns and towns became cities.

( In the US a **village** is used for a small town in a foreign country that seems more old-fashioned than a town in the US. )

A process of **urbanization** was **underway** – a process which the Romans had to **abandon** in the 3<sup>rd</sup> century under the pressure of **barbarian** invasion.

Rome was a **specifically urban** civilization.

The Romans liked their cities and the **conveniences** the city offered, and people living outside the Roman Empire **30** were considered uncivilized, and called **barbarians**.

But by the 4<sup>th</sup> century at the latest, this began to change as Germanic tribes moved south of the **Danube ( River )**, deeper and deeper into the heart of the Roman Empire.

With the final **collapse** of the Empire in the 5<sup>th</sup> century Germanic tribes were everywhere.

Not only did they bring their language, religions and customs, they also brought with them a **preference** for the open country and a general **distaste for** anything **citified**.

*		
* frigøre / befri ng. fra ng.		* forpligtelse
* under >	* & tiltrækkende	* betingelser vilkår
* brede sig ind i ng.		
* planere / jævne ng. ( med jorden )	* mose (-r) * & vådeng (-e)	
* sump (-e)		* marsk (-enge)
* til disposition / rådighed		
* vindmølle		
*		
* tilbageslag		
* erkende at -		* ( tre- ) vangs (-skifte )
* rotation		
* bundlinie, slutresultat		* ernæret
* sagens kerne et at -		
* bange for ng.	* hungersnød	* ~ opfostre > * børn
	mangel	
* oppebære >		
* population, befolkning		
*		
*		
*		
*		
*		
* landsby		
*		
* byudvikling		* undervejs i gang
* forlade ng.		
* barbarisk		
* specifik		* bymæssig
* speciel, særlig		
* bekvemmelighed		
*		
* barbar		
*		
* Donau ( floden )		
*		
* sammenbrud		
*		
*		
* præference / forkærlighed for ng.		
* afsmag for / modvilje mod / ulyst til / lede / ubehag ved ng.		* bypræget

<b>168</b> So, between the 5 <sup>th</sup> and 11 <sup>th</sup> century the urban civilization of the former Roman Empire <b>declined</b> .	*		
The process of urbanization would not begin <b>anew</b> until the 11 <sup>th</sup> century at the earliest.	* forfalde		
One of the reasons why this is so is that the threat of barbarian <b>migration</b> began to <b>subside</b> .	* påny		
And the reason this took place was that <b>slowly but surely</b> , the chieftains of the <b>barbarian</b> tribes were converted to Christianity.	*		
<b>10</b> And once a chieftain was converted, so too were <b>his people</b> converted as an act of homage and loyalty.	* ~ folkevandring ( bevægelse, flytning )		* aftage
The economic <b>factors</b> of <b>renewed</b> urbanization <b>affected</b> all orders of European society.	* langsomt men sikkert		
However, it was the European peasantry who <b>reaped</b> the fewest <b>benefits / fruits / profits / rewards</b> of this progress.	* barbarisk ( stamme )		
Just the same, landlords were now <b>making</b> fewer <b>demands</b> on the peasantry.	*		
Peasants could rent land to which they could <b>direct</b> all their <b>energy / energies</b> .	* ng's folk		
They could also <b>pass</b> ( ) on this land to their sons.	* fornyet	* faktor	* påvirke ngt.
In other words, a degree of liberty had begun to <b>infiltrate</b> the world of the European peasants.	*		
While the peasants <b>slaved</b> their <b>guts out</b> in the countryside, there were <b>artisans</b> (o-f) who inhabited towns and cities.	* hørste ... fordele af ngt.		
As <b>craftsmen</b> and <b>shopkeepers, builders</b> and <b>tradesmen</b> , they had the <b>potential</b> to <b>spread</b> the <b>fruit(s)</b> of their <b>labour</b> over a wider market, a market <b>stretching</b> from the <b>North Sea</b> to North Africa and from <b>Constantinople</b> to <b>Lisbon</b> .	* komme med / stille ( færre ) krav >		
<b>30</b> In the towns of Italy – especially <b>port towns</b> like <b>Genoa</b> , <b>Pisa</b> and <b>Venice</b> – a <b>passion</b> for <b>money-making</b> resulted in what would eventually become <b>genuinly capitalist</b> society.	* til ng.		
It was in Italy that the <b>commercial practices</b> and <b>attitudes</b> so characteristic of later ages first emerged.	* rette sin / sine >		
Italian <b>merchants</b> learned how to change money, they <b>perfected double-entry bookkeeping</b> , and they formed <b>trading associations</b> in order to protect their <b>mercantile interests</b> .	* energi / ~ kræfter ( mod ngt. )		
	* videregive ngt. til ng.		
	* infiltrere / trænge ind i ngt.		
	*		
	* slide sig en pukkel til ( * slave pukle		* indvolde ) tarme
	* håndværker		
	* håndværker	* butiksejer	* bygningsmester / -håndværker
	* potentielle muligheder	* sprede udbyttet af >	* arbejde
	* strække sig		* Nordsøen
	* konstantinopel		* Lissabon
	* havneby		* Genova
	* = * Venedig	* lidenskab for ngt.	* penge- indtjening
	* ægte		* resultere i ngt. kapitalistisk
	* kommerciel handelsmæssig	* praksis	* holdning indstilling
	*		
	* købmand		
	* perfektionere ngt.	* dobbelt-	* bogholderi
	* handle handels-	* sammenslutning forening, selskab	* beskytte > * handels-
	* interesser		

169 By the 13 <sup>th</sup> century, there existed a <b>bourgeois mentality</b> characterized by the <b>spirit of entrepreneurial risk-taking</b> , the <b>pursuit of gain</b> and with all that, the demand for greater political freedom.	* borgerlig `buê\$wã~ / -`\$wã~ * karakteriseret / kendetegnet ved ngt. * risikoløbning * efterstræbelse	* mentalitet indstilling, tankegang * ånd af > * driftig, foretagsom iværksættende * vinding
However, although we can <b>locate</b> a growing bourgeois mentality, there is at this time <b>no evidence of a nascent</b> bourgeois culture – that again would <b>come with time</b> .	* lokalisere / stedfæste ngt. * ingen tegn på ngt. * komme med tiden	* begyndende (blivende født) opdukkende, spirende * se note side 200
The <b>ruling orders</b> were also changing <b>fast</b> .	* herskende	* (samfundsorden-) klasse * hurtigt
The nobility were the men who reaped the most benefits	*	
10 from <b>emancipation of</b> the serfs and the <b>subsequent</b> increase in <b>agricultural</b> productivity.	* frigivelse af ng. * landbrugs- (mæssig) * forbedret	* deraf følgende, efterfølgende
With <b>improved</b> productivity, the nobility could now collect higher rent and <b>obtain</b> greater <b>profits from the sale of surplus</b> agricultural goods.	* opnå > * overskuds- overskydende	* profit af ngt. * salg af ngt.
And while the nobility clearly made more money, they were always <b>quick to find</b> new and quicker <b>ways to spend it</b> .	* være hurtig til at - * forbedre ngt.	* finde veje til at - 'bruge dem (money er ental)
So, they began to <b>improve</b> their castles – castles became larger and more <b>elaborate</b> .	* udførlig, fuldendt kunstfærdig	
They <b>sought out</b> better <b>armour</b> and weapons.	* finde frem til ngt.	* armering rustning
20 The artisans of the growing towns and cities, now <b>joined together in cooperatives</b> known as <b>guilds</b> , were only too happy to supply the nobility with <b>whatever</b> it was they needed.	* slutte sig > * sammen i > andelsforening * hvadsomhelst	* kooperativ * laug
So while the nobility built bigger and more <b>impenetrable</b> castles, and <b>obtained</b> the best in <b>armour</b> and <b>weaponry</b> , they also began to <b>dress in</b> finer clothes which the merchants of the cities, now also members of their own guilds, brought to them.	* ugennemtrængelig * skaffe sig ngt. * klæde sig i ngt.	* rustning * våben
Many members of the nobility across Europe sought a <b>refinement</b> of life.	* raffinement * raffinelse	
30 The economic changes which are already briefly <b>described</b> brought with them cultural and intellectual progress, especially when <b>compared with / to</b> the centuries which had come before.	* beskrive ngt. * sammenligne ngt. med ngt.	
Early epochs <b>compare with</b> later ones in many ways.	* ligne ngt. * tåle sammenligning med ngt.	
If an epoch can <b>compare with</b> another epoch, it <b>compares favourably with</b> this epoch.	* ... med * ... fordelagtigt ...	
If an epoch <b>doesn't / can't compare (with another epoch)</b>	* ikke ...	
it <b>compares unfavourably (with it) (in some way)</b> .	* =	

**170** The Crusades, for the most part, were over.

What was the medieval knight to do now that his main business of the day – killing the infidels and their children – had come to an end?

Hunting and tournaments, at least for some nobles, began to **give way / yield to** a lively interest in culture and education.

The feudal court, once merely a **gathering place** for knights to **fill** their **bellies** while engaged in a Holy **Quest**, now became **centres of intense literary** activity.

**10** But, **with all this said**, it would **be incorrect to say** that the medieval knight was a more **cultured** individual.

The medieval knight was still a **fighting machine**, he was still a **fierce** and **oftentimes gluttonous warrior**.

In the 12<sup>th</sup> and 13<sup>th</sup> centuries, something like a **revival** of the arts and **letters** (pl.) was taking place across England and the Continent.

This revival – or Renaissance – was more **pronounced in** Western Europe than in Eastern Europe.

One of the major characteristics of this Renaissance was **20** the **rediscovery of numerous Latin classics**.

For the philosophers, **theologians** and **poets** of the 12<sup>th</sup> and 13<sup>th</sup> centuries, there was much **wisdom** to be **obtained from** the pages of *Virgil's* (70 – 19 BC) *Aeneid*, or *Ovid's* (43 BC – AD 17) **Metamorphosis** or the letters and political **speeches** of the greatest Roman **orators**, *Cicero*, or the **Stoicism** of *Seneca* (5BC – AD 65).

Besides the ideas **implicit in** these **classical authors**, the major **contribution of** the rediscovery of these **texts** was a style of writing.

**30** That style was classical Latin.

12<sup>th</sup> century scholars were now reading texts written in Latin over 1200 years ago.

**It goes without saying that** the Latin language had **undergone profound transformation over the years**.

- \*
- \*
- \*
- \*
- \*
- \* vige for / blive erstattet af ngt.
- \* samlingssted
- \* fylde > vom \* mave \* søgen, stræben ridderfærd
- \* midtpunkt for > \* intens, heftig, voldsom \* litterær inderlig, lidenskabelig boglig
- \* ~ når alt dette er sagt \* være > \* ukorrekt at - \* sige
- \* kultiveret
- \* kamp- \* maskine
- \* barsk \* ofte \* grådig \* kriger forslugen
- \* genoplivelse / -opblomstring
- \* litteratur
- \*
- \* udtalt i ( et sted )
- \*
- \*
- \* genopdagelse \* talrige \* latinsk \* klassiker (~ værk / kunstner )
- \* teolog \* poet
- \* visdom \* opnå / få < fra ngt.
- \*
- \* metamorfose formforandring, forvandling
- \* tale
- \* stoicisme ( filosofi ud fra følelsesbeherskelse )
- \* indirekte, men vigtig i ngt. \* klassisk \* forfatter
- \* bidrag fra ngt. \* tekst
- \*
- \*
- \*
- \* det siger sig selv at -
- \* gennemgå > \* dybt- \* forandring \* gennem \* årene gående omformning

<b>171</b> The scholars <b>discovered</b> ancient texts written in a more or less <b>recognizable</b> form, but which were more <b>expressive</b> and more <b>lyrical</b> .	* opdage / finde ngt. * genkendelig * lyrisk, stemnings- / følelsesbetonet	* udtryksfuld
As a result ,12 <sup>th</sup> and 13 <sup>th</sup> century poets began to express their own thoughts and feelings in a language that came to them <b>naturally</b> , and these poets were now writing for an increasingly larger audience.	* * * naturligt *	
While most <b>poetry</b> remained religious <b>in nature</b> , there were writers who were beginning to <b>emote over</b> more secular <b>10</b> themes.	* poesi, digtning digtekunst * give ( overdrevent ) udtryk for følelser over ngt. *	* i sin art
It was the <b>Wandering Scholars</b> or <b>Goliards</b> who used the <b>vernacular</b> instead of classical or even medieval or <b>Carolingian</b> Latin.	* omvandrende / -strejfe * folkesprog * karolingisk ( vedr. Karl den Store ) * glad, munter glædelig * appel til ng. * pietet fromhed *	* lærd * & vagant
The Goliards wrote free and <b>joyous</b> poetry – they have a near immediate <b>appeal to</b> the modern <b>reader</b> because they stand outside the image of medieval <b>piety</b> and religious devotion.	* & vagant * desperation / fortvivelse over ngt. * uvished ( ved ) > * kritisk overfor ngt. * professor * utilfreds med ngt. * slå sig løs i ngt. * boheme * folkelig * hurtigt og nemt * svagest *	* vers * livet * livets * uvisheder * sunget
<b>Goliardic Verse</b> , meant to be <b>sung</b> rather than simply read, praises the pleasures of this world as well as <b>despair over</b> <b>20</b> the <b>uncertainties of life / life's uncertainties</b> .		
The Goliards were also deeply <b>critical of</b> the ' system ' – especially the privileged orders of the knights, bishops and <b>professors</b> .		
The wandering scholars were <b>dissatisfied with</b> their own age and so they <b>revelled in</b> a rather <b>boisterous, drunken</b> life – they were Europe's first <b>bohemians</b> .	dis' satisfaid / di' - `revêld * utilfreds med ngt. * slå sig løs i ngt. * boheme	* støjende højroset * fuld, fortrukken beruset, drikfældig
The growth of <b>vernacular literature</b> happened most <b>readily</b> in those places where the authority of the Church seemed to be <b>weakest</b> .	* folkelig * hurtigt og nemt * svagest *	* litteratur, bogverden det skrevne udslag af kulturen
<b>30</b> But there were other reasons why we can observe this <b>shift from</b> medieval Latin <b>to</b> the vernacular.	* skift fra ngt. til ngt.	

<b>172</b> In the <b>south</b> of France, professional <b>scribes</b> were finding it more and more difficult to write <b>official</b> documents in Latin.	* syd, -lig	* skriver
The words of the <b>spoken language</b> , came much easier to them.	* officiel * talt > *	* sprog
After all, it was the spoken language which had <b>grown</b> and so literature, whether an official document or <b>poem</b> .	* vokse udvikle sig * officiel	* digt
By 1200 most officials document had to reflected this change and were now <b>composed</b> in the vernacular.	* * komponeret / sammenfattet / udfærdiget	
Other examples of vernacular texts <b>abound</b> : the Chanson	* findes i overflod	
<b>10</b> de Roland is perhaps the best French example.	*	
From Germany we have the <b>Kaiserchronicle</b> .	* kejserkrøniken	
And of course, Dante's (1265 – 1321) <b>Divine Comedy</b> . di`vain	* Den Guddommelige Komedie	
Geoffrey Chaucer's (c.1332 – c. 1400) Canterbury Tales,	*	
Giovanni Boccaccio's (1313 – 1375) Decameron,	*	
William Langland's (c.1332 – 1400) Piers Plowman,	*	
and Jean Froissart's (c.1333 – 1405) Chronicle	*	
While these <b>developments took place</b> across Europe and England, a new institution appeared at which much of this new <b>learning</b> could be found.	* ~ ( denne ) udvikling *	
<b>20</b> By the 13 <sup>th</sup> century, universities had been <b>established</b> at Oxford, Paris, Berlin, <b>Padua</b> , and Bologna.	* lærdom * ( universitet ) oprettet	
We have the <b>so-called Dark Ages</b> to <b>thank for</b> the university.	* Padova * såkaldt	* mørke middelalder * takke
University students could obtain a	*	
<b>BA</b> ( Baccalaureus Artium / Bachelor of Arts),	*	
<b>MA</b> ( Magister Artium / Master of Arts ),	*	
or <b>PhD</b> ( Philosophiae Doctor / Doctor of Philosophy )	*	
degree in one of four higher faculties:	*	
Theology ( DD: Doctor of Divinity ), Philosophy ( PhD ), di`viniti	* guddommelighed	
<b>30</b> Medicine ( MD: Medicinae Doctor / Doctor of Medicine ),	*	
or Law ( JD: Jurum Doctor / Doctor of Law ).	*	
Some schools <b>specialized in</b> law such as the University of Bologna – a university run and <b>controlled</b> by the students.	* specialisere sig i ngf. * kontrollere / styre ngf.	
Other universities, like Paris, specialized in theology and philosophy.	*	
Padua specialized in medicine.	*	
Many universities <b>abounded with / in</b> students and teachers from different parts of Europe.	* vrimle med ng&t. *	



## THE ARISTOCRACY AND THE **COMMONAGE** [ -id§ ]

**173** During the **monarchic** or **monarchical** **periods**

the king, queen, **emperor** etc. **reigned over** the aristocracy

as well over the **commonal(i)ty** as an **absolute ruler**,

sometimes **both in name** and **in fact**, sometimes **more**

**in name than in fact**, and sometimes **in name only / alone**.

The power of the Pope can be **compared to** that of  
a monarch.

**By invoking** a **divine right to** ( **ascend** ) the **throne**  
and **arrogating** ( **to himself** ) the **position as** the head of /

**10 positioning** himself **as** the head of the Church,

a monarch may **gain absolute rule**.

As an **absolute ruler** of an **absolute monarchy**,  
perhaps **maintaining divinity**, the **absolute monarch**  
has power **beyond / without compare**.

A **commoner** is a **common person** as **distinguished from**  
one with **rank**, status etc., in E anyone of **the nonnobility**.

As noblemen and **peers**, the nobles **rank in** noble **rank**.

The **dukes rank above** the other members of the **peerage**

which are **marquises / E marquesses, counts** or **earls** (E),  
`ma~kwisiz [ = ]

**20 viscounts** and **barons**.

`vaikaunts

The **ranks** of the English hereditary aristocracy or nobility

are **ranked in order** of dignity in the following ranks: **dukedom**,

**marquisate, countship** or **earldom, viscount(c)y**,

`ma~kwizit

and **barony** or **baronage**.

The territories ruled by the noble ranks are

a **duchy** or **dukedom**, a **marquisate**, a **county** or **countship**,

`dût\$î

an **earldom**, a **viscountcy** or **viscounty**, and a **barony**.

The **noblewomen** – the wives of noblemen or women

holding the same **rank** are: **duchess>es, marquise>es** or

`dût\$ês -`ki~z

**30 marchioness>es, countess>es** of either a count or

`ma~\$ê`nes

an earl, **viscountess**, and **baroness>es**.

The **entire** British peerage is called the **baronage**.

A **baronet** (E) is a member of a British hereditary order of  
honour **ranking below** the barons, made up of commoners  
and **ranking at the top of** the gentry.

In England the gentry is the class under the nobility,

**nonnobles entitled to** a **coat of arms**, esp. those

owing large tracts of land.

\* almuen, borgerskabet, den jævne befolkning

\* monarkisk, enehersker

\* periode

konge- / kejser-

tidsrum

\* kejser

\* regere over ng.

\* almuen etc.

\* som \* enevældig \* hersker

( ~ regere evevældigt )

\* både af navn og af gavn

\* mere >

\* af ... end af ...

\* kun af navn

\* sidestillet med ngt.

\*

\* påkalde sig > \* gud- \* ret til ( at - ) \* ( bestige ) \* trone  
dommelig

\* tilrane ( sig )

\* stilling som ngt. som ngt.

\* anbringe sig selv som ngt.

\* opnå >

\* eneherredømme

\* enehersker

\* enevældigt monarki

\* hævde /

\* guddommelighed

\* enevoldskonge

påstå ngt.

\* uden sidestykke

\* almindeligt menneske

\* skelne ngt. fra ngt.

\* rang

\* ikkeadelen

\* ligemand

\* rangordnes i >

\* rangorden

\* adelsmand

\* hertug

\* rangere over

\* adel, -sstand

\* markis

\* greve

\* jarl

\* vicegreve

\* =

\* rangklasse / -orden

\* rangordne ngt.

\* hertugrang

/ -værdighed

\* markisrang

\* greverang

\* jarl-

\* vicegreve-

/ -værdighed

\* baroni-

\*

\* hertugdømme

\* markisdømme

\* grevskab

\* jarldømme

\* vicegrevskab

\* baroni

\* adelskvinde

\* rang

\* hertuginde

\* markisinde

\* =

\* grevinde

\* vicegrevinde

\* baronesse

\* hele

\* højadlen

\* =

\* rangere under ng.

\* rangere i toppen af ngt.

\*

\* ikkeadelig

\* berettigede til ngt.

\* våben, -skjold

\*

**In all likelihood** a noble would **pass on** as such.

\* efter al sandsynlighed      \* =      \* som sådan

<b>175</b> One <b>possible</b> and <b>likely cause of</b> marriage is love,	* mulig	* sandsynlig	* grund / årsag til ngt.
and one possible and <b>probable reason for</b> marriage is <b>reason</b> .	* sandsynlig	* ( fornufts> ) grund til / begrundelse for ngt.	* fornuft
Today, love is the <b>most likely cause of</b> a marriage,	* mest sandsynlig	* grund / årsag til ngt.	
and the <b>most probable reason to</b> marry / <b>for</b> marrying.	* =		
A marriage is a <b>cause</b> and an <b>occasion for</b> celebration.	* anledning >	* lejlighed >	* til ngt.
As you <b>probably</b> know, in the Middle Ages, among nobles,	* sandsynligvis		
<b>the likeliest reason for</b> a marriage was <b>social ambition</b>	* sandsynligste	* grund til ngt.	* social ...
when two families <b>shared a common interest in</b> a marriage.	* dele en fælles interesse / have interessefællesskab i ngt.		
A <b>convenient way to</b> fulfil that <b>ambition in those days</b> was	* bekvem * måde at - * opfylde > * ambition	* på den tid dengang	
<b>10</b> ( E: <b>quite / very / most</b> ) <b>likely marriage of convenience</b> .	* sandsynligvis	* fornuftsægteskab	
It was <b>probably</b> the most <b>reasonable way to</b> achieve /	* =	* fornuftig	* måde at - * opnå >
<b>attain</b> social <b>status in those times</b> .	* opnå >	* & anseelse	* på den tid dengang
So marriages of convenience were <b>more common among</b>	* mere almindelig blandt ng.		
the nobles in the old days while the <b>most common</b> reason	* mest ...		
for marriage today is love.	*		
Convenience was then a <b>commoner</b> reason than love	* almindeligere		
while today the <b>commonest</b> reason is love.	* almindeligst		
A <b>common cause of</b> marriage is pregnancy.	* grund til ( fremtidigt )	* = ( når det er sket )	
Having <b>compared` notes with</b> an attractive commoner	* udveksle meninger med ng.		
<b>20</b> it was ( quite, very, <b>highly</b> , most ) <b>likely that</b> a noble fell	* ( højst )	* sandsynligt at -	
in love with a commoner so a <b>love affair</b> was (...) <b>likely</b> .	* uægteskabeligt kærlighedsaffære	* sandsynlig	
A love affair would <b>probably be OK</b> .	* sandsynligvis		
As it <b>seemed</b> (quite etc.) <b>probable that</b> a noblewoman	* synes at være -	* sandsynligt at -	
fell in love with a commoner, a love affair was (...) <b>probable</b> .	* sandsynlig		
A love affair was a <b>probability</b> – it was <b>within probabilities</b>	* sandsynlighed	* indenfor sandsynlig- hedernes grænse	
as many nobles <b>took</b> ( great ) <b>pleasure in</b> ( having ) an affair.	* finde / stort ) behag i ( at ) ngt.		
<b>Not uncommonly</b> , there were love affairs.	* ikke usædvanligt		
It was, in fact, <b>fairly common for</b> a noble <b>to</b> have an affair,	* temmelig almindelig for ng. at -		
and some nobles took <b>uncommon</b> pleasure in an affair	* usædvanlig		
<b>30</b> with a commoner.	*		
So just like love affairs are <b>quite common in all times</b>	* temmelig almindelig til alle tider		
<b>among</b> all classes, it was not <b>uncommon for</b> a noble <b>to</b> have	* blandt ngt.	* usædvanligt for ng. at -	
an affair with a commoner. ( Never say ' <i>It's common that</i> ! )	*		
So as it was <b>common practice for</b> many nobles to	* almindelig skik / praksis for ng.		
have an affair, the <b>risk</b> ( <b>that</b> ) a <b>spouse committed adultery</b>	* risikoen for at - * ægtefælle	* begå utroskab	
was <b>considered likely</b> / never <b>considered unlikely</b> .	* anse / betragte ngt. som + adj.	* sandsynlig / u-	
Many spouses <b>considered themselves</b> ( <b>to be</b> ) unlucky.	* betragte sig / se sig selv som ( at være ) + adj.		
<b>Consider yourself</b> fortunate not to be in that position !	* =		
Today it's <b>common practice that</b> people marry for love.	* ~ normalt at -		

<b>176</b> The (...) <b>likely</b> consequence / effect / outcome / result etc.	* ... sandsynlig ( følge, virkning, resultat )	
of an <b>intermarriage</b> was, however, <b>animosity</b> .	* indbyrdes giftermål blandet ægteskab	* animositet fjenthed
The (...) <b>probable</b> consequence / effect / outcome etc.	* ... sandsynlig	
of such intermarriages was <b>animosity towards</b> the married couples.	* ... mod ng. *	
A <b>mixed marriage</b> is a marriage between two people of different religions or races.	* blandet ægteskab *	
The law didn't <b>forbid</b> the nobles { to <b>intermarry with – / from</b> intermarrying with the commoners.	* forbyde ng. at - * =	* indgifte sig ( > ) * med ng.
<b>10</b> As <b>likely as not</b> an intermarriage would, however, cause personal <b>animosities between</b> members of the noble families.	* så sikkert som noget * fjendskab / uvenskab / had mellem ng. *	
As <b>intermarriage</b> (U) <b>between</b> nobles and commoners <b>was likely to</b> cause <b>hostility</b> , intermarriages <b>were likely to be uncommon</b> .	* indgiftning mellem ng. * ville sandsynligvis ( gøre ngt. ) * ville sandsynligvis ( være ngt. )	* fjenthed * ualmindelig
Intermarriages were <b>unusual</b> and <b>rare</b> .	* usædvanlig	* sjælden
If a nobleman married a commoner <b>for the love of</b> her, it would ( E: quite / very / most ) <b>likely</b> (adv.) cause animosity.	* af kærlighed til ng. * sandsynligvis	
It would <b>in all likelihood</b> mean animosity.	* efter al sandsynlighed *	
<b>20</b> If a noblewoman married a commoner, it would ( quite / very / most ) <b>probably</b> cause trouble – <b>in all probability</b> it would mean trouble.	* sandsynligvis * efter al sandsynlighed	
<b>By comparison</b> , it's <b>more likely that</b> a nobleman would marry a commoner even if a lot of trouble would still be a <b>strong probability</b> .	* ved sammenligning * overvejende sandsynlighed. *	* mere sandsynligt at -
Would a nobleman refuse to marry a commoner ? ( Yes, ) <b>Probably</b> .	* sandsynligvis	
Would he miss her, and <b>be in a bad mood</b> ? <b>Probably</b> .	* være i dårlig humør	* =
<b>In the unlikely event of</b> an intermarriage, there seemed to <b>30</b> be almost <b>no probability of</b> success – there seemed to be <b>a low probability of</b> success and a <b>high probability of</b> failure.	* i det usandsynlige tilfælde at - * ingen sandsynlig for ngt. * en lav ...	* høj ...
The project seemed to <b>have</b> a high / strong <b>probability of</b> failure as it had a low <b>probability of</b> ( being ) a success.	* have ... * ... sandsynlighed for ( at ) ngt.	
There was a <b>high / strong probability that</b> an intermarriage would soon <b>crack</b> under the pressure.	* høj / stærk * krakelere, revne gå i stykker	* sandsynlighed for at -
There was <b>every probability that</b> such a marriage would <b>break down</b> so the <b>probability of</b> ( being ) a success is <b>low</b> .	* al mulig sandsynlighed for at * bryde sammen	* sandsynligheden for ( at - ) ngt. * lav

<b>177 As to</b> intermarriages, failure seemed <b>quite probable</b>	* hvad angår ngt.	* temmelig sandsynlig
or, <b>rather, highly</b> and <b>most probable</b> .	* temmelig snarere	* højst
So <b>as regards</b> intermarrying, success seemed	* hvad angår	* & mest
<b>less</b> or <b>least probable</b> or, in other words, <b>not very probable</b> .	* mindre ...	* mindst ...
<b>Narrations / narratives</b> of intermarriages often have,	* beretning	* ikke særligt ...
however, an <b>improbably</b> happy end.	* historie	
It seems highly <b>improbable that</b> it happened so.	* usandsynlig	
A narration / narrative with a happy end <b>seems ( like / to be )</b>	* utroværdig	
an <b>improbable</b> story with <b>improbable</b> characters,	* =	
<b>10</b> and <b>improbable</b> plots.	* synes ( som / at være ) ngt.	
It all <b>sounds improbable</b> ( subj. pred. ).	* usandsynlig	* =
As a married couple had to face the <b>probability of</b> ( having )	* utroværdig	
a lot of trouble, they had to face the <b>improbability of</b> ( having )	* =	
a happy marriage.	* lyde ...	
Some people claim, <b>improbably</b> , that they have a happy marriage.	* sandsynligheden for at -	
Stories of intermarriages with an unhappy end seem	* det usandsynlige i at -	
more like <b>probable</b> stories with <b>probable</b> characters	*	
and <b>probable</b> plots.	* usandsynligt	
<b>20</b> It all sounds more <b>probable</b> .	* utroværdigt	
It seemed <b>improbable that</b> the situation <b>then</b> would change.	*	
Being asked if he would marry a commoner, any noble	* sandsynlig	* =
<b>of sound mind</b> would answer: ' <b>Not ( bloody ) likely !</b> '	* troværdig	
<b>A likely story !</b>	* =	
<b>Quite</b> the <b>opposite</b> , only a noble in an <b>improbable</b>	* usandsynligt at -	* daværende
<b>state of mind</b> would intermarry with a commoner.	*	
<b>The balance of evidence / probability</b> suggests that	* rask i hovedet	* ikke ( på nogen måde ) sandsynligt
nobles <b>intermarry</b> .	* det ku' lige passe	& ( ganske ) udelukket
<b>On the balance of evidence / probability,</b>	* lige det modsatte	* usædvanlig
<b>30</b> a wise noble would marry a noble.	* sindstilstand	
A woman of the commonalty had to <b>consider</b> carefully	* afvejning af vidnesbyrd / sandsynlighed	
<b>whether</b> ( or not ) to marry a nobleman.	* & moden overvejelse	
<b>On the balance of probabilities,</b> she had to decide whether	* gifte sig indbyrdes	
a nobleman was a <b>likely</b> candidate for a husband.	* efter at have overvejet mulighederne	
Mistakes could and, <b>in all probability,</b> would <b>occur</b>	*	
so she had to <b>consider</b> carefully <b>who</b> to marry.	* overveje >	
Mistakes were a <b>common occurrence</b>	* hvad enten ng. skal ngt. ( eller ej )	
and intermarriages were an <b>uncommon</b> occurrence.	* efter grundig overvejelse	
	( på sandsynlighedernes vægt )	
	* oplagt >	* kandidat / emne til ngt.
	* after al sandsynlighed	* opstå, hænde
	* overveje hvem -	ske, forekomme
	* almindelig	* hændelse
	* u-	forekomst

**178** It was ( quite / very / most ) **unlikely** ( **that** ) a noble married a commoner so intermarriages were (...) **unlikely**.

A noble family might accept an intermarriage, but it was **hardly likely**.

An acceptance was **possible but not likely**.

It was **possible but not probable** although love affairs seemed a **probability rather than** (just) a **possibility**.

As an intermarriage seemed **unlikely to** succeed **there was very little likelihood of** a nobleman marrying **10** a commoner and **lower likelihood of** a noblewoman marrying a commoner.

**The likelihood was that** nobles intermarried.

**The probability was that** a noble married a noble.

**It was more than likely that** a noble would marry a noble.

**There was the greatest / the highest likelihood of** that happening.

**Very likely** a nobleman would **abstain from** ( having ) an **overt** love affair with an attractive commoner, and **most likely** he would **refrain from** intermarrying **20** with a commoner / (an) intermarriage between classes.

A nobleman **was**, however, **more likely to** marry a commoner than a noblewoman was.

There was very **high likelihood of** a nobleman marrying a noblewoman but **greater likelihood of** a noblewoman marrying a nobleman.

A noblewoman **was less likely to** marry a commoner.

A member of **the royal family**, a **royal**, was **least likely to** **contract a marriage with** a commoner.

There was **less likelihood**, in fact, the **least likelihood** **30** and the **lowest likelihood of** that happening.

There was the **least probability** of that **occurring**, and the **lowest probability** of that taking place.

As **the royals** belong to **the upper `crust**, they are **upper-`crust** people **preceding** all others in rank.

**Non-royal** people are expected to **style** royal people " Your, his, or her **gracious** ( Majesty the ) King or Queen, your, his, or her gracious ( **Crown** ) **Prince** or Princess " etc.

Servants are expected to **abase themselves**, and obey orders **without comment** (U).

\* usandsynligt at -

\* usandsynlig

\*

\* næppe sandsynligt

\* mulig men ikke ...

\* =

\* sandsynlighed \* snarere end \* mulighed

\* uden sandsynlighed for at -

\* der er meget > \* lille sandsynlighed for ng.

\* mindre ...

\*

\* det sandsynlige er at -

\* =

\* det er mere end sandsynligt at -

\* der er den største sandsynlighed for ng.

\*

\* temmelig sandsynligt \* afholde sig fra ( at ) ng.  
( tillokkende )

\* åbenlys

\* højst ... \* afholde sig fra ( at ) ng.

\*

\* være mere tilbøjelig til at -

\*

\* høj / stor sandsynlighed for ng.

\* større ...

\*

\* være mindre tilbøjelig til at -

\* den kongelige familie \* en kongelig \* mindst tilbøjelig  
til at -

\* indgå ægteskab med ng.

\* mindste sandsynlighed

\*

\* mindste sandsynlighed \* forekomme  
hænde, ske

\* =

\* de kongelige \* det øverste sociale lag

\* overklasse \* gå forud for ng. \* i rang

\* ikke kongelig \* navngive / titulere ng. ( navn )

\* nådig

\* ( kron- ) prins

\* ~ underordne sig

\* uden kommenteren / ~ kommentarer

179 When a nobleman had had to break off a love affair,	*
a rejected commoner was seldom offered a <b>likely</b> explanation.	* sandsynlig, troværdig
So, <b>at worst</b> , she was offered <b>no likely</b> explanation at all	* i værste fald
or, <b>at best</b> , she was offered an <b>unlikely</b> explanation.	* i bedste fald * usandsynlig utroværdig
She was seldom offered a <b>probable</b> explanation,	* sandsynlig, troværdig
Being simply offered an <b>improbable</b> explanation,	* u-
she was offered <b>no probable</b> explanation.	* i værste fald * ingen ...
Showing a total lack of <b>common courtesy / decency</b>	* almindelig høflighed / anstændighed
he didn't have the <b>courtesy / decency</b> to admit his deceit.	* ... til at -
10 It was a <b>commonly</b> held opinion that the nobles often	* almindelig ( udbredt holdning )
<b>took a liberal view of</b> the basic <b>decences</b> of civilized society.	* ~ tage sig friheder overfor / * anstændigheder se stort på ngt.
Many noblemen were <b>commonly</b> known as womanizers.	* almindeligvis
In the <b>eyes of decent commonplace</b> people,	* i > * anstændig * ganske almindelig * ( ngs.) øjne pæn
many noblemen were nothing more than <b>common lechers</b>	* gemen * lider- / horebuk
showing an <b>indecent lecherous</b> behaviour.	* uanstændig * liderlig
The nobles seemed to <b>endow</b> each other <b>with</b> the qualities	* udstyre ng. / ngt. med ngt. ~ tillægge ng. ngt.
they found it <b>convenient</b> ( <b>for</b> them ) to possess	* belejligt ( for ng.) at -
as they <b>mutually endowed</b> each other <b>with</b> responsibilities.	* gensidigt * <<
It is a matter of common knowledge that	* det er almindelig viden / en kendt sag alle og enhver ved
20 what might <b>seem</b> easy to a commoner in his realm	* = * domæne verden
might <b>seem</b> difficult to an aristocrat, and <b>vice versa</b> .	* = * & omvendt
It's common knowledge that the <b>nobly born</b> aristocrats	* <<< * adeligt * født
as <b>front-rank</b> people of <b>front-rank importance</b>	* højt rangerende * førsterangs * betydning
<b>considered</b> themselves ( <b>to rank</b> ) well <b>above / over</b>	* anse sig selv for ( at rangere ) * højt hævet over ng.
the commoners in talent and intelligence.	*
Even noblemen and noblewoman, not <b>well-endowed</b>	* veludstyret ( med barm / penis )
<b>were</b> seldom <b>above pouring / heaping praise on</b> themselves,	* være hævet over / * overøse / * ros på-ring preiz holdte sig for god til at - overdænge ng. med ngt.
although they <b>inwardly</b> / secretly, <b>probably</b> and <b>most likely</b>	* inderst inde * sandsynligvis * højst sandsynligt inwêdli i ens stille sind
envied a <b>well-endowed</b> man or woman of the commonalty.	* veludstyret
30 Today most people <b>seem to read</b> the nobility's	* synes at - * ~ opfatte ngt.
understanding of themselves as <b>self-glorification</b> .	* selvforherligelse
It seems to us that the upper class <b>glorified</b> themselves	* synes som om / * forherlige ng.
to <b>such an extent</b> that they were <b>blinded by</b>	* forekomme én at - * forblændet af ngt.
<b>self-exaltation</b> and <b>self-praise</b> .	* selvforherligelse * selvros egzâ~l' tai\$ên
<b>By common consent</b> it isn't <b>seemly</b> to <b>praise</b> oneself.	* som der er almindelig * sømmeligt / * rose / enighed om passende at - prise ng. * oplagt * sted at -
The Holy Bible is, <b>by common consent</b> , a <b>likely</b> place to	* mest ...
look for dogmas; probably the <b>likeliest</b> place.	
The Bible <b>conceives of</b> God <b>as</b> almighty,	* opfatte ng. som ngt.
and the religious dogmas are <b>absolutes</b> for some people.	* absolutter for ng.

**180** Reading the Bible, many people **seem to** hear

the **Supreme Being's** voice as (a) **divine intervention**.

The social order **seemed to** many people **to** be divine.

So the **social order seemed ( to be )** divine.

The aristocrats **had a narrow attitude to** social classes,

**It seemed ( that )** they were **blessed by** God.

**It seemed to** the aristocrats ( **that** ) they were **blessed with**

an **ability to look after** the **welfare of** the **nation**,

and **had a** divine **duty to intervene ( in any matter )**.

**10 As (if) to the manner born**, the **self-righteous** aristocracy

**looked upon themselves as noble-minded** people

that **nobly looked to** the **government of** the community.

**Looking on** themselves **with confidence**, the aristocracy

was **convinced** that they should **look after** the **public welfare**.

Confidence **was bred into** them at an early age.

**In their self-righteousness**, the aristocrats believed

they were **better mannered** than the **commonage**.

They were **in the mistaken belief that** the more

**artistic** your manners are, the better.

**20 Feeling / having scorn for** commoners and **manual work**,

the aristocrats expected the **commonal(i)ty**

to **look to** them **for government / to be governed**,

By **the art of** lying and **manipulation**, the **crafty** aristocrats

**had got craftiness down to a fine art**.

So they had **carried / brought** manipulation **to a fine art**.

' **Blessed** (adj.) are the poor, ' it's said so the aristocrats  
'blesid

**made a fine art of manipulating** craftless

**commonplace** people as they **considered it important**

and **necessary to maintain / sustain a class barrier**

**30** Manipulation of the lower classes is a method **commonly**

used by the upper class to keep their high-rank position.

**By / in comparison with today's** society, the class barriers

of the **rigid** class society were then **rigidly fixed**.

**Social mobility** today is common **in comparison ( to then )**.

An aristocrat may be **full of craft** and **crafty as a fox**.

**Since the beginning of time**, the **artful** nobility have  
**used** all their **art to manipulate** the **artless** commonalty.

Having **manipulated** the farmers **into** bankruptcy,

some **manipulative** nobles **got** land **from** farmers **by craft**.

\* synes ( som sansning )  
have det indtryk at

\* det højeste væsen \* guddommelig \* indgriben  
Gud

\* ... ng. at -

\* samfundsordenen \* synes / forekomme >  
( at være ) ngt.

\* have > \* snæversynet \* holdning til ngt.

\* det synes som om / \* velsignet af ng.  
se ud til at -

\* det forekommer ng. at - \* velsignet med >

\* evne til at > \* ~ passe på / \* velfærd \* nationens  
tage sig af >

\* have pligt til at - \* gribe ind ( i ngt. )

\* som skabt til det \* selvfærdig

\* anse / betragte sig som / \* ædelsindet  
synes selv at være ngt.

\* ædelt \* ~ sørge for / \* styre  
tage ansvar for > regering

\* se på / betragte ng. med > \* tillid, tiltro

\* overbevist / \* ~ passe på / \* offentlig \* velfærd  
selv synes tage sig af ngt.

\* være indlært i ng.

\* selvgodhed

\* have bedre manerer \* almuen, de borgerlige  
/ opførsel / ikke adelige

\* være i den vildfarelse at -

\* forfinet

\* føle / have foragt for ng&t \* manuelt \* arbejde  
håndens

\* almuen etc

\* se hen til / \* > -lse \* lede / styre  
henholde sig til ng. -ing regere ng.

\* kunsten at - \* mani- \* udspekuleret, durkdreven  
pulation rænkefuld, træsk

\* gøre > \* udspekulerethed, etc. \* til > \* en kunst

\* gøre ngt. > \* -hed \* til > \* en kunst

\* velsignet, salig

\* gøre en kunst \* manipulere ( med ) ng. \* ukunstlet  
ud af ngt. ikke udspekuleret

\* ganske almindelig \* anse / betragte \* vigtigt ( at - )  
det som >

\* nødvendigt at - \* bevare / \* klasse- \* skel  
opretholde ngt.

\* almindelig

\*

\* i sammen ligning med ngt. \* vore dages

\* stift \* fastlåst

\* social mobilitet \* ved sammenligning ( med ngt. )  
( i forhold til ngt. )

\* udspekuleret etc. ( -hed ) \* snu som en ræv

\* siden tidernes \* underfundig, udspekuleret, listig  
morgen snu, snedig, durkdreven, træsk

\* bruge sin \* manipulere ng. \* kunstløs, ukunstlet  
snilde til at - uskyldig, ikke udspekuleret

\* manipulere ng. til ngt.

\* manipulerende \* få ngt. fra ng. \* ved list



**181** By means of **artifice / cunning** and all their **arts**,  
the nobles **manipulated the common people into** believing  
that the nobility **had the welfare of the common man**  
**at heart** at the same time as they claimed that it was simply  
**common politeness for** a commoner **to** serve an aristocrat.

Confident that their divine superiority was **predetermined**  
pri~di'tê~min  
by their **noble decent**, these **manipulators, artists in** words,  
di'sent  
**manipulated** the rules of social order **with great art**.

**Artfully** manipulating **the common-law courts**,

**10** the aristocracy manipulated **common law** (E,U),  
**the common-law rules and rights**  
as well as the **statute law** (U) made by **Parliament** (U,E).

**Common law** has **developed from** customs and decisions  
made by judges: **case law** is based on decisions  
in earlier cases.

Some people may live in a **common-law marriage** with  
either a **common-law wife** or a **common-law husband**.

The couple may have **joint ownership of** their property.

The aristocracy **kept (on)** being very **upper class**.

**20** The **upperclassmen** and **upperclasswomen** usually  
**looked to it that** the **lower-class** people,  
**underclassmen** and **underclasswoman**, kept their position  
**at the bottom of** the divine social order.

The aristocracy **made** the common people **believe** that  
they took decisions **for the common good**,  
that their **enterprise** was **to the common advantage**,  
and that all classes worked together **for the common good**.

The nobility **laid down the law**; they **lay down that**  
all classes must work together **for a common purpose**,  
**30** and **towards a common goal**.

People of the commonalty were often forced to  
**make common cause with** the aristocracy, and,  
**in times of war**, **make common cause against** the enemy.

**Otherwise**, commoners were **seduced into**  
**finding common cause with** the nobles,  
and into **finding common cause against** an enemy.

Even if a commoner **were troubled by** personal problems  
the nobles didn't seem to be **troubled** by their **conscience**.

- \* list
- \* udspekulerethed
- \* manipulere ng. til at -
- \* have menigmands velfærd >
- \* på hjertet
- \* almindelig høflighed for ng. at -
- \* afgøre / bestemme ngt. på forhånd
- \* adelig \* afstamning \* manipulator \* kunstner til ngt. ædel byrd (ord-) ...
- \* manipulere / håndtere ngt. \* kunstfærdighed snilde
- \* udspekuleret etc. \* sædvaneret \* domstol
- \* sædvaneret
- \* ... regel
- \* ... retting
- \* vedtægslovgivning
- \* sædvaneret
- \* udvikle sig fra ngt.
- \* sagsbaseret lov
- \*
- \* papirløst ægteskab, anerkendt af sædvaneretten
- \* papirløs hustru
- \* ... ægtemand
- \* fælles
- \* ejerskab til ng.
- \* blive ved (med) at -
- \* være >
- \* overklasset
- \* overklassemand
- \* ... kvinde
- \* se til / sørge for / passe på at -
- \* underklasse
- \* underklassemand
- \* ... kvinde
- \* i bunden af (rangorden)
- \* & foregøgle ng. at -
- \* til fælles bedste
- \* foretagsomhed
- \* til fælles fordel
- \* virkelyst
- \* ... bedste
- \* udtale sig autoritativt
- \* fastslå at -
- \* docere
- \* ~ med et fælles formål for øje
- \* mod et fælles mål
- \*
- \* gøre fælles sag med ng.
- \* i krigstid
- \* ... mod ng.
- \* i andre henseender
- \* forført til at -
- \* gøre fælles sag med ng.
- \* ... mod ng.
- \* være plaget af ng. (ngt. plager ng.)
- \* ... af sin samvittighed

182 As people act <b>as it seems</b> best to them,	* som det synes / forekomme ng. ng.	
people of all classes acted <b>as it seemed</b> best.	* almindelige mennesker	* =
As things <b>far off seem</b> ( to be ) difficult to understand,	* på lang afstand	* synes / forekomme at -
the life style of one class <b>seems</b> difficult to understand to	* ... ( svært ) at ( forstå ) for ng.	
the opposite class.	*	
<b>There seems to</b> have <b>been</b> some misunderstanding:	* der synes at være ng.	
<b>it seems</b> true <b>that</b> some aristocrats were <b>endowed with</b> talent,	* det synes ng. at - / forekommer	* begavet med ng.
<b>it seems</b> a fact <b>that</b> some aristocrats had <b>common sense</b> ,	* =	* sund fornuft
<b>it seems that</b> some aristocrats were <b>in the vanguard</b> ,	* det synes som om / ser ud til at -	* i fortroppen
<b>10 it seems</b> some of them were in the vanguard of the society,	* =	
and <b>it would seem that</b> they were to the manner born.	* kunne ...	
The aristocracy <b>seemed</b> ( to be ) too privileged.	* synes ( udefra ) / se ud til / forekomme ( at være ) + adj.	
They <b>seemed to</b> the commoners ( to be ) arrogant	* forekomme ng. at være ng.	
as they did whatever <b>seemed</b> an advantage to them.	* ... ( en fordel ) for ng.	
When the aristocrats did what <b>seemed</b> best,	* =	
they <b>solely</b> did what <b>seemed</b> best to them.	* ene og alene	* =
The aristocracy <b>seemed</b> a very <b>privileged</b> class	* =	* privilegeret
which would be <b>quite an art to explain</b> ( ) away.	* noget af et kunststykke	* bortforklare ng.
The aristocrats <b>seemed to</b> believe in divine <b>endowments</b>	* =	* begavelse talent
<b>20 so they seemed to</b> know what they were doing avoiding	* =	
<b>manual labour</b> that gives <b>coarse hands</b> and coarse <b>skin</b> .	* manuelt * arbejde * grove * hænder * grov * hud	
<b>It seemed that</b> the aristocracy was <b>a burden to</b> the classes	* synes som om / se ud til at -	* byrde for ng.
that did <b>manual jobs</b> and got <b>rough hands</b> and <b>rough skin</b> .	* manuelt * job, arbejde * grove * hænder * grov * hud	
<b>Broadly, it seemed to</b> the commoners <b>that</b> the aristocracy	* i det store og hele	* forekomme ng. at -
was <b>a burden on</b> the community.	* byrde for ng.	
<b>Historians</b> search different <b>sources for comparison</b> .	* historiker	* kilde til > * sammenligning
<b>Comparison with today</b> is interesting.	* sammenligning med ng.	* i dag vore dage
It's interesting to <b>draw / make a comparison</b> ( with today ).	* drage ...	
<b>Comparisons between</b> life then <b>and</b> today are interesting.	* ... mellem ng. og ng.	
<b>30 Comparisons of</b> then <b>and</b> today –	* ... af ng. og ng.	
a <b>comparison of</b> life then <b>to</b> life today	* =	
and a <b>comparison of</b> people then <b>with</b> people today –	* ... af ng. .med ng.	
show surprising similarities and differences.	*	
<b>In comparison</b> ( to / with <b>previous ages</b> ) /	* i sammenligning ( med ng. )	
<b>by comparison</b> ( with <b>former times</b> ), scientific discoveries	* ved ...	
of the <b>earlier times bear / stand no comparison with</b> those	* ikke tåle sammenligning med ng.	
of the Industrial Revolution.	*	
Other things <b>stand / bear comparison</b> ,	* tåle ...	
which may not be <b>uninteresting to</b> study.	* uinteressant at -	
un`intréesting		

183 The aristocracy <b>seemed like parasites</b> as their effect on the society <b>seemed like</b> that of a <b>parasitic disease</b> .	* synes / forekomme at være som ngt. * =	* parasit snylter * parasitisk * sygdom
It <b>seemed as if</b> the <b>prosperous</b> nobility <b>unilaterally benefitted from</b> / <b>by</b> the existence of a <b>class system</b> .	* synes / se ud / forekomme som om - * have gavn af ngt.	* velhavende * klasse- * ensidigt * system
It <b>seemed as though</b> the <b>lower</b> <b>classes</b> had to <b>labour</b> for the upper class having almost nothing <b>in return</b> .	* = * til gengæld	* arbejde hårdt for ng.
It <b>seemed like</b> a <b>profitable</b> idea for the upper class.	* synes / se ud til / forekomme at være ngt.	* profitabel fordelagtig
It <b>seemed to</b> most commoners <b>like quite the contrary</b> .	* forekomme ng. at være	* det stik modsatte
<b>On the whole</b> , the <b>affluent</b> aristocrats <b>seemed to</b>	* i det store og hele	* velhavende * synes / se ud til at -
10 <b>disregard</b> their part of the <b>reciprocal obligation(s)</b> .	* se bort fra >	* gensidig * forpligtelse(r)
Although the nobility <b>was under</b> a <b>legal obligation</b> ,	* være underlagt >	* lovmæssig * =
and <b>had</b> a <b>moral</b> and <b>social obligation to(wards)</b> the lower classes, it <b>seemed, in general</b> , to <b>disregard</b> its <b>obligation(s)</b> .	* have > * moralsk * synes at -	* samfunds- * forpligtelse overfor ng. * almindeligvis * se bort fra ...
<b>By and large</b> , the <b>wealthy</b> nobility seemed to disregard their <b>obligations to</b> look after the lower classes.	* i det store og hele * forpligtelse til at -	* velhavende
<b>Very largely</b> the aristocracy <b>seemed to neglect to fulfil / honour / meet</b> their <b>obligation(s)</b> .	* i det store og hele * opfylde / honorere >	* = * undlade at - * forpligtelse(r)
<b>Broadly speaking</b> , <b>scornful of</b> manual labour, the aristocrats <b>seemed to abuse</b> their position in society.	* i det store og hele * synes at -	* fuld af foragt for ngt. * misbruge ngt.
20 <b>Generally speaking</b> , even <b>contemptuous / dismissive / disdainful of</b> commoners whom they <b>exploited</b> as a source of <b>cheap labour</b> , the nobility <b>seemed to abuse</b> their power.	* i det store og hele * ... for ng. / ngt. * billig * arbejdskraft * synes at -	* fuld af foragt > * udnytte ng. * misbruge ngt.
<b>Roughly speaking</b> , they seemed to <b>abuse</b> the commoners <b>by disregarding</b> all <b>sense of brotherliness and humanity</b> .	* i det store og hele * fornemmelse for ngt.	* ignorere / lade hånt om ngt. * medmenneskelighed * =
A noble was <b>brought up to ignore</b> the <b>worries of</b> the lower classes and to <b>make excuses on the plea that</b> the social order was a divine institution: a <b>work of God</b> .	* opdrage til at - * undskyldte sig med den begrundelse at -	* ignorere / lade hånt om ngt. * ngs. bekymring
A noble used to <b>excuse himself</b> by saying, 'I can't <b>seem to</b> understand people from the lower classes ;	* Guds værk * undskyldte / forklare sig	
30 I don't <b>worry over</b> the lower classes and their behaviour, and I <b>seem to have</b> no <b>obligation / be under</b> no <b>obligation to</b> <b>care or worry about</b> them or their lives.'	* ng. synes ikke at - * det synes / forekomme ng. ikke ( muligt ) at - * bekymre sig over ng&t. ~ være nervøs over * = * have > * forpligtelse * ~ være forpligtet til at - * interessere / bekymre sig for ng.	
Most people today <b>seem to think that</b> the upper-class people <b>exclusively</b> worked for their own <b>welfare</b>	* synes / se ud til virke som om at - * udelukkende	* synes / tænke mene / tro at - * velfærd
<b>in total disregard of</b> their Christian obligations.	* ignoreren / ligegyldighed / mangel på hensyntagen overfor ngt.	
When many aristocrats behaved in a <b>mannered</b> style, it seemed a <b>mannerism of theirs</b> .	* manér * påtaget, affekteret * mani / indgroet vane hos ng.	
<b>Showing a blatant / flagrant disregard for</b> commoners, they often <b>failed to consider</b> these <b>people</b> and their <b>feelings</b> .	* vise ngt. * vise hensyn overfor ng. / ngs. følelser	* åbenbar påfaldende * ligegyldighed / mangel på hensyntagen overfor ng.

**184** Little by little, the nobility **turned into downright snobs**

who artfully **refined** and cultivated their **seemly** manners

in order to **distance themselves from** the commoners.

What seemed **seemly for** a commoner was often regarded

as **unseemly for** a noble so if **witnessing** a commoner's

**coarse language** and **coarse manners**, an aristocrat

would have a **quizzical** expression / look / smile on his face.

The aristocracy **couldn't seem to curb** their **snobbish**

**seemliness**.

**10** They **seemed** unable to put a curb on their **snobbery**.

Many snobs **despise the commonplace / the everyday**.

They **disdain** and **scorn** ordinary life and ordinary people.

A new fashion often soon become a **commonplace**.

So new fashions, things and words not in **common usage**  
often soon become **commonplace** (adj.).

Sometimes becoming **commonplaces** again,  
old fashions may **experience** a **renaissance**.

Exchanging **hackneyed witticisms** and **commonplaces**,  
the snobs **cultivated common or `garden conversation** or,

**20** in America, **`garden-variety** conversation.

Everybody can take a walk <sup>vê raiêti</sup> **on the green, on the common**,  
or **on common land** (E), held in **common ownership**.

The **common garden frog** and **common chickweed** are  
**commonly** seen in open land.

Red **squirrels** are **uncommon** in England; they were once  
a **common** sight but are now becoming **rare**.

Aristocrats used to take a **hackney carriage** (E) **pulled** by  
a horse, and today a **hackney carriage** or **hackney cab**  
is the official name for a **taxicab**, a **taxi**, or **cab**.

**30** When you come to a taxi **rank** and see the cab-**rank**,  
you are supposed to take the first cab in the **rank**.

The **ruling class** always **looked out commodities**  
**of the first rate** or **first rank** for themselves  
and their **snobbish** families.

Their **snobbishness seems like** an **inborn** character.  
<sup>in' bâ~n</sup>

**It seems as if** their **snobbery** is an **inbred** character.

**It seems as though downright insolence,**

**downright swindles**, and **downright lies** on the part of  
the nobility were then **the rule rather than the exception**.

\* blive til > \* rene \* snob

\* raffinere / forfine > \* sømmelig \* mannerer

\* distancere sig fra / lægge afstand til ng.

\* sømmelig for ng.

\* usømmelig for ng. \* være vidne til / overvære ng.

\* groft \* sprog grove \* mannerer

\* forvirret, forundret, evt. lettere muntert

\* kunne synes ude af stand til \* snobbet  
/ se ud til ikke at kunne -  
\* sømmelighed

\* =

\* foragte ng. \* det almindelige / banale  
/ hverdagsagtige

\* foragte / \* = \* håne ng.  
afvise ng.

\* almindelighed

\* almindelig \* brug

\* almindelig

\* almindelighed

\* opleve > \* renæssance

\* fortærsket \* åndfuldhed \* almindelighed  
banalitet, floskel

\* dyrke > \* ~ ganske almindelig > \* konversation  
~ høflig samtale

\* =

\* grønning \* fælled  
græsareal midt i landsby åbent fællesareal i en by  
\* fællesareal \* fælles- \* eje

\* almindelig \* have- \* frø \* ... fuglegræs

\* almindeligt

\* egern \* ualmindelig

\* almindelig \* sjælden

\* hestedroshe \* trukket ( af hest )

\* droshe  
hyrevogn

\* taxi

\* -holdeplads \* række

\* række

\* herskende \* udse ng. > \* handelsvare

\* første klasser forbrugsgode  
\* til ng.

\* snobbet

\* snobberi \* ligne / fremstå / \* medfødt  
virke som ng.

\* det synes \* snobberi \* & indavlet  
/ ser ud som om -

\* = \* direkte fornærmelse

\* ren og skær svindel \* lodret løgn

\* reglen snarere end undtagelsen

**185 It would seem like a downright scandal** or even like  
a **common nuisance** if anyone today in a democratic society  
**allowed himself** the arrogance of the nobility in the past.

**It seems that** many aristocrats were **downright rude**.

**It would seem that** the aristocracy's attitudes **were built on**

**downright `cynicism** and **hypocrisy**.

hi`påkrisi

**Face to face with** commoners, the **impudent** aristocrat's

**manners often prove ( to be ) `impudently free** and **cynical**.

The aristocrat's **seeming piety** often failed to **cover up**

**10 the `impudence of the way** they **looked down upon**

the commoners and their **ways ( and manners )** .

The **cynical** and **hypocritical** aristocrats always

**had the impudence to** call an commoner a **retarded** fool.

If a commoner, however, feeling **deeply offended**,

**in return thumbed** his **nose at** an aristocrat,

the latter would react **offendedly** and **hypocritically**.

' What **rascality** – what **rascally impudence** ! '

' What an **`impudent rascal** ! - **None of your impudence** ! '

the **cynic** and **hypocrite** would **cry out**, **cocking** his **head**.

**20** If a commoner **cocked a snook at** an aristocrat,

the commoner might be **`prosecuted** for **unseemliness** :

for **giving** an aristocrat **the snooks**.

The aristocracy **looked (on)on** common people **as**

**common** (E) men and women with **common manners** :

people who look **common**, who wear **common** clothes,

and **speak with** a **common** lower-class **`accent**

and **unseemly usage** eg. **talking billingsgate**.

The aristocracy mostly **had** a **conservative outlook**.

Acting wasn't a **seemly occupation** for a noble girl.

**30** The **aristocratic manners** of the nobility, often formed by

its **narrow outlook on** the world, **retarded** the progress

of the society and kept it from **moving with the times**.

Many aristocrats failed to **keep up to date**.

Neglecting to **keep up with** the **progress in** society

leads to growth **retardation** in business and society.

**Having a narrow vision of** the society and the future,

and accused of being a real **stick-in-the-mud**, an aristocrat

**made excuses**, and said, ' I **seem unable to keep up –**

**I can't seem to keep up with the times**.'

\* det kunne se ud som / ville forekomme at være -  
\* almindelig plage  
\* tillade sig ngt.

\* direkte ( skandale )

\* det synes / virker / se ud forekommer som om  
\* < = ( modererende )

\* grov uforkammet  
\* være bygget på ngt.

\* ren og skær \* kyniske

\* hykleri  
\* skinhellighed

\* ansigt til ansigt med ng.

\* manerer, måde  
\* opførsel, -træden

\* vise sig ( at - )

\* uforkammet

\* fri \* kynisk  
\* sjælsrå

\* tilsyneladende

\* fromhed  
\* gudsfrugtighed

\* dække over ngt.

\* uforkammethed

\* på den måde

\* se ned på ng.

\* sæder og skikke

\* kynisk

\* hyklerisk

\* have den uforkammethed /  
\* være uforkammet nok til at -

\* retarderet

\* dybt

\* krænket, fornærmet / -arget

\* til gengæld

\* række næse af ng.

\* krænket  
\* fornærmet / -arget

\* hyklerisk

\* skurkestreg

\* skurkagtig

\* fornærmelse

\* uforkammet

\* skurk

\* stop din uforkammethed

\* kyniker  
\* sjælsrå person

\* hykler

\* råbe op

\* hæve / løfte ngt,

\* en fisk af visse arter  
( ~ vise sin foragt for ng. )

\* retsforfølge

\* usømmlighed

\* =

\* betragte / anse som ng.

\* gemen, vulgær  
\* tarvelig

\* =

\* manerer

\* =

\* =

\* tale med >

\* <<

\* accent  
\* tonefald

\* usømmelig \* ( sprog-) brug

\* tale som en rejekælling  
( engelsk fiskemarked )

\* have >

\* konservativ

\* livssyn / -anskuelse  
/ - indstilling

\* sømmelig

\* beskæftigelse  
\* profession

\* aristokratisk

\* overklasse-

\* manerer

\* snæversynethed

\* hæmme /  
\* forsinke / forhale ngt.

\* følge med tiden

\* være tidssvarende / i takt med tiden

\* holde sig >

\* opdateret

( = følge godt med )

\* følge med ngt.

\* fremskridt /  
\* udvikling i ngt.

\* hæmning

\* forsinkelse,

\* forhalelse

\* have >

\* smal

\* vision om ngt.

~ snævertsynet forestilling - - -

\* ~ tørvetriller

\* komme med  
\* undskyldninger

\* synes ( undskyldende )

\* følge med  
\* holde trit etc.

\* ikke synes at kunne >

\* følge med >

\* tiden  
& holde sig orienteret

186 Apart from a few **points in common**, the opposite

classes didn't **seem to have** much **in common**.

**Having a narrow view of** life, though, both parties **seem to**

have **disregarded** the **common character** of human beings.

**In common with** a **commoner** and a **common man**,

a nobleman **is subject to** the **course of nature**.

A **`double-faced / -tongued** nobleman only **seemed** friendly, though, when he wanted a commoner to **do** him a **favour**.

'**One good `turn deserves an`other**,' he would say.

10 Aristocrats, though, considered **manual labour** as

a **degrading** occupation; **degrading to** people of **rank**.

So in spite of their **seeming** friendliness, they would **find it**

**beneath them** to **make** the **effort** to **lend** a commoner

a **helping hand with manual work**.

As he would find it **beneath** his **dignity** to **do manual work**, he wouldn't **lend** ( them ) a ( **helping** ) **hand**.

**To look at** the aristocrats, they **seemed to** **obsess about / over** social status.

**Seemingly obsessed by / with** status, the aristocrats

20 **seem to take** ( great ) **pains / go to great pains**

not to **look like** an **ordinary man**.

**Taking** ( great ) **pains with** their looks, and **taking** ( great ) **pains over** their manners, they **seemed to behave as if / as though** they **had** no interests **in common with ordinary people**.

Social status may **become** an **obsession with** everybody in the society **from top to bottom**.

**Obsessively** making an effort to gain status, some people's dream of status **borders (up)on obsession**.

30 **Obsessive about** ( gaining ) status,

they have an **obsessive** concern for status.

**Ignoble** people, having **ignoble** manners, and **unseemly behaviour** are, however, found everywhere from top to bottom of the society.

So dreaming of status **to the point of obsession**.

a snob just **risks cocking** ( ) **up / bungling** their projects, as their ( dangerous / **unhealthy** ) **obsession with notables** makes them **cock** an **ear / eye at** anyone with high status.

\* ~ berøringspunkt

\* synes / se ud til at - \* have ngt. til fælles  
\* have > \* indskrænket \* syn på / opfattelse af ngt.

\* se bort fra ngt. \* fællespræg

\* til fælles med / ligesom ng. \* borgerlig person \* almindeligt menneske  
\* underkastet \* ikke adelig \* naturens gang

\* dobbeltspillende / tvetunget \* give det udseende af hyklerisk, bedragerisk at vare ngt.  
\* gøre ng. en tjeneste

\* den ene tjeneste er den anden værd

\* manuelt \* arbejde

\* nedværdigende ( for ng. ) \* stand

\* tilsyneladende \* finde det >

\* under sin værdighed \* gøre sig den anstrengelse at - \* give ng. >  
\* en hjælpende hånd med ngt. \* manuelt \* arbejde

\* under sin værdighed at - \* udføre ...

\* give ( ng. ) en ( hjælpende ) hånd

\* & af udseende \* synes / se ud til at - ved sin fremtræden

\* kere sig konstant om / ~ gå konstant op i ngt. ( interesseret / bekymret )

\* tilsyneladende \* besat / optaget af ngt.

\* synes / \* gøre sig ( store ) anstrengelser for at - se ud til at -

\* se ud som ngt. \* almindeligt menneske

\* gøre sig umage / ( store ) anstrengelse med ngt.

\* =

\* synes / se ud til at - \* opføre sig > \* som om -

\* have ngt. til fælles \* almindelige mennesker

\* blive en besættelse hos ng.

\* fra top til bund

\* som besat

\* grænse til > \* besættelse

\* besat af ( at gøre ) ngt.

\* tvangsmæssig

\* lav gemen \* & uværdig vanærende  
\* usømmelig \* opførsel

\*

\* på grænsen af besættelse

\* risikere at - \* forkludre ngt.

\* besættelse af ngt. \* usund \* notabilitet betydningsfuld person

\* spidse ører / hæve øjnene mod ng. ~ høre / se opmærksomt op på ng.

<b>187</b> Education at a university seemed the <b>most likely way to move up the social ladder</b> – it seemed like the most <b>suitable way of moving</b> up the social ladder.	* mest oplagt / passende * bevæge sig op ad den sociale rangstige * <<	* vej til / måde at -
Students of all classes could <b>go to university</b> .	* gå / komme på universitet (-et)	
Some <b>uncommonly</b> gifted students of the commonage managed to <b>enter a university</b> , and <b>study at a university</b> .	* usædvanlig ( begavet ) * starte på >      * studere på >      * et ...	
So a commoner could <b>be / study</b> (sth.) <b>at university</b> (E).	* være / studere ( ng. ) på ...	
<b>Associating with</b> each other was an <b>uncommon</b> experience for both nobles and commoners.	* omgås ng. * * fælles for ng. * = * få en forkølelse * fællesnævner for ng. * * laveste ... * * * appellere til ng. * læseplan, pensum eksamenskrav * =	* usædvanlig            * laveste fællesnævner
<b>10</b> Basic features are <b>common to</b> humans of all classes and <b>common to</b> all human reactions.		
Both a noble and a commoner <b>catch a (common) cold</b> .		
<b>The common denominator</b> of all classes is the basic human needs.		
<b>The lowest common denominator</b> is something that is simple enough to be interesting to or to be understood by the largest number of people; some kind of entertainment <b>appeals to the lowest common denominator</b> .		
Some schools have a <b>syllabus</b> that seems aimed at <b>20 the lowest common denominator</b> ; the <b>sort</b> of people who are least intelligent or accept something that is of low quality.	* ( den ) slags ( mennesker )	
Although a noble and a commoner <b>have</b> the basic needs <b>in common</b> , the nobility, in many other respects, <b>has</b> nothing <b>in common with</b> the commonage.	* have ng. > * til fælles * ( ikke ) have ng. til fælles med ng. * ... med ng.	
Their dwellings and culture <b>had</b> some features <b>in common</b> but the nobility's <b>mode of life, mode of behavior</b> and <b>dress</b> , <b>had</b> not much <b>in common with</b> that of the commonalty.	* livsstil      * måde at opføre sig på      * tøjstil * have ng. til fælles med ng.	
Many commodities and habits were <b>commonplace</b> only in upper-class homes.	* almindelig *	
<b>30</b> <b>Breaking</b> with <b>precedent / tradition</b> as <b>breaking</b> with old <b>precepts / principles</b> , students <b>with</b> little <b>in common</b> might become graduates <b>with</b> a lot <b>in common</b> .	* bryde med >      * tradition      * => * princip forskrift      * med >      * ( lidt ) til fælles * ... ( meget ) ... * * have ng. til fælles * =	
Coming together at the university, students who believed they <b>had</b> nothing <b>in common</b> often realized, however, they <b>had</b> much <b>in common</b> .		
A dog may, for instance, <b>cock</b> its leg <b>by</b> the leg of anybody, <b>regardless / irrespective of</b> their <b>descent</b> .	* løfte benet > * uanset ng.	* ved ( op ad ) ng. * afstamning
<b>Mastering</b> a dog, and making it <b>house-trained</b> E/A <b>-broken</b> is <b>quite</b> an <b>effort</b> ; dogs need to <b>be exercised</b> a lot.	* ~ blive herre over ng. * ~ noget af en præstation	* stueren * blive motioneret

**188** The students learned to **use** their **common sense** (U)

and **take** a **common-sense approach** to a problem.

A **common room** is for informal use by all.

**The commons** (A) is a room where students can eat.

**All things considered, considering** his background,  
**considering** ( **that** ) he is underprivileged,

and **considering who** he is, and **what** limited **means** mean,  
a student of the commonalty may **succeed / do well**

while one of the aristocracy may **fail / do badly, considering.**

**10** If person **conceives** the **idea** of **standing as candidate**,  
and keeps **having the common`touch**, he will be one of  
the most **likely** candidates for the post, and most likely  
be chosen as a candidate for the post **in common consent**.

The question is whether he will **make it to the top**  
without **loosing the common`touch**.

Some traditions and ideas **had / enjoyed / were**  
( **common** ) **currency** among all students, while some new  
ideas **gained / received** ( **wide** ) **currency** at the university.

A **dictionary** explains words in one or two languages.

**20** A **grammar** describes the **grammar** of a language;  
the rules by which words are **combined into** sentences  
and change their forms ( nouns **inflect**, verbs **conjugate** ).

English has **common nouns** of **common gender**  
and **proper nouns** ( or **proper names** ).

John and Jon are **common** English names.

Warned of **commom spelling mistakes**,  
the students **check** their **spelling** and **grammar**.

In mathematics they studied **calculus of probability**  
by means of which a **probability** or **ratio of chance**,

**30** **statistical probability** or **improbability** can be figured out.

A **common denominator** is a number that can be divided  
by all the numbers below the line in a **set** of **fractions**.

Arithmetical errors and miscalculations such as  
adding, subtracting, multiplying and dividing mistakes  
are ( not **un-** ) **common occurrences**.

The **probability** of winning the **first prize** in most lotteries  
is really very low – You're **probably right**.

There may be as little as a 0.0001 % **probability**.

A prize may **be presented** at a **presentation ceremony**.

\* bruge >

\* sund fornuft

\* sund fornuft

\* tilnærmelse / -gang til ng.

\* fællesrum

\* spisesal

\* alt taget i betragtning

\* i betragtning af ng.

\* ... af at -

\* ... af hvxx

\* økonomiske midler

\* klare sig godt

\* klare sig dårligt / skidt

\* i betragtning

\* få >

\* ide at -

\* stille op som >

\* kandidat

\* have folkelighed

\* oplagt

\* i bred enighed

\* ~ komme til tops

\* miste >

\* folkeligheden

\* have, få / nyde > // være >

\* almindelig >

\* udbredelse // gængs

\* vinde / få >

\* vid

\* udbredelse

\* ordbog

\* grammatik / -bog

\* grammatik

\* ( være ) kombineret / sammensat til ng.

\* bøjes

\* bøjes

\* fællesnavn

\* fælleskøn

\* egennavn

\* almindelig  
gængs

\* =

\* stave-

\* fejl

\* kontrollere >

\* stavning

\* grammatik

\* sandsynlighedskalkule / -(be-)regning

\* sandsynlighed

\* statistisk ...

\* usandsynlighed

\* fælles-

\* nævner

\* sæt / bestemt mængde af >

\* brøk

\*

\*

\* ( u-) almindelig  
/ sædvanlig

\* hændelse  
forekomst

\* sandsynlighed for ng.

\* førstepræmien  
hovedgevinsten

\* ~ have >

\* sandsynligvis

\* ret

\* sandsynlighed

\* ( præmie ) blive overrakt \* overrækkelses- \* ceremoni



\*

\* sætte et fortilfælde / skabe præcedens for ngt.

**190** Some candidates with aristocratic **looks**,

**rank among** the finest candidates for **exaltation**.

**Ranked as** candidates, ready to be **put into noble rank**,

they **are due for ennoblement**.

They **fall into rank**, and **rank in line**.

The King or Queen **ennobles** the candidates.

When they are **exalted**, they are **raised to the peerage**,  
ig`zå~ltid  
and will **rank with** other noblemen, now their **peers**.

**Created a peer**, and **raised to exalted** ranks and positions,

**10** is a moment of extreme joy and **exaltation** to each of them.

**Moving in very axalted circles**, a peer or **peeress**

may easily **feel exalted** and **newly alive**.

Some people **exalt** emotion and intuition **above reasoning**.

**Above all exalting** their **idols**, some people

**exalt** certain feelings, kind of **conduct**, and **lines of action**.

When people praise and raise somebody or something  
to a higher rank or position, the **exaltation of** idols, feelings,  
conduct and lines of action as well as the exaltation of emotion  
and intuition above reasoning is often beyond common sense,  
**20** and to a rank or position that they do not deserve.

The upper class may **have / hold noble rank, official rank**,  
or **military rank**.

Today non-nobels may be **persons of high rank** like  
military officers, police officers, officers in the government  
or in an organisation.

Some **persons of rank pull rank** unfairly.

When people of the upper class **pull** their **rank**,  
they most easily **pull** ( their ) **rank on** the lower classes.

Even if people belonging to the **world of class and fashion**  
**30** have no rank, they may be **influential figures in society**.

**Being influential in** society they may even be  
**highly influential in forming public / popular opinion**.

People may form **pressure groups** in order to  
**exert pressure on** the government.

A **charitable** nobleman or noblewoman **out of the common**  
may **pledge** a sum of money **to** an organization or charity.

**In the form of** (a) private **endowment**, they may **endow**  
- `dau -  
a university, local institutions, **welfare work**, or **child welfare**.

\* udseende  
\* rangere iblandt ng. \* forfremmelse  
ophøjelse  
\* rangere ng. som ngt. \* indsætte i adelsrang  
\* stå for tur til ngt. \* adling  
\* stille sig på række \* =  
\* adle ng.  
\* adle / ophøje / \* ophøje ng. til > \* adelsstanden  
forfremme ng.  
\* ~ være på niveau med ng. \* ligemand  
\* gøre ng. til adelsmand \* ophøje ng. til ngt. \* ophøjet  
fornem  
\* eksaltation, løftet stemning  
begejstring, opstemthed  
\* bevæge sig i > \* ophøjet \* kredse \* adelsdame  
\* føle sig > \* opstemt \* nyelig \* fuld af liv  
begejstret  
\* ophøje / lovprise ngt. \* over > \* resonnering  
\* frem for alt \* - = - \* idol, afgud  
gude- / afgudsbillede  
\* - = - \* føren sig frem \* handlemåde  
\* lovprisning / ophøjelse af ngt.  
\* =  
\* have > \* adelig \* rang \* embedsrang  
\* militær rang  
\* person af > \* høj rang  
\* person > \* af rang \* udnytte rang  
( pl. ~ standspersoner )  
\* ... sin ...  
\* ... overfor ng.  
\* de rige og smukke  
\* indflydelsesrig > \* person \* i ngt.  
\* være betydelig medvirkende  
\* i høj grad ... til at - \* offentlige mening  
\* pressionsgruppe  
\* udøve > \* pres på ng.  
\* godgørende \* ikke helt almindelig  
\* love ngt. til ng&t.  
\* i form af ngt. \* donering, donation \* betænke >  
fond, legat ( en institution )  
\* velfærdsarbejde \* børnehjælpsarbejde

## MILITARY RANKS

**191** In the military hierarchy, the **commissioned officers rank** at the top **whilst** the **non-commissioned** officers **rank in the middle**, and the **privates rank at the bottom**.

A general is an officer **of / with** very **high rank**, an officer **in the highest**, or second or third highest **rank**.

**Holding the highest rank** in the British Army the **Field Marshal ranks above** the general.

So the general **ranks next below** the Field Marshal.

In U.S. Army, **the general of the army ranks above**

**10** a **general**, a **lieutenant general**, a **major general** and a **brigadier general**.  
lef tenênt E/A lu~t-

As the **commander-in-chief** of a **fleet**, the **admiral** is the **highest ranking** officer.

An admiral is an officer **of the highest rank** in the navy.

In the British Navy the highest ranking officer is called

**Admiral of the fleet**.

In the U.S. navy the **Fleet Admiral** is **highest ranked** officer.

As the **highest ranking** officer naval officer the Fleet Admiral **ranks immediately above** an admiral

**20** who ranks above a **vice-admiral** and a **rear admiral**.

The **grades** below are **captain**, **commander**, **lieutenant commander**, **lieutenant senior grade** etc.

In the U.S. Air Force the **general of the air force** ranks above the **general** and the **lieutenant general**.

The Fleet Admiral **ranks alongside** the general of the air force and both **ranks with** the general of the army.

Other **ranks** within the **commissioned officers** in the army are the **colonels**, who **rank below** the generals, but **rank above** the **lieutenant colonels**, the **majors**,  
kê'leunlz  
E: lef tenênt  
**30** the **captains**, and the **lieutenants**.

The **first lieutenant outranks** the **second lieutenant**.

Being the **non-commissioned officers** a **sergeant ranks above** a **corporal**.

The **common soldiers**, also called **private soldiers** or **privates**, **rank lowest**.

If a government **d demands that** the army ( should ) attack an enemy, the army officers **order** their inferiors **to** attack.

An officer **dares** his inferiors **to surpass themselves**.

\* officer (-s befalingsmand )

\* rangere                      \* medens                      \* underofficer  
   hvorimod                      (-s befalingsmand )  
\* ... i midten                      \* menig                      \* ... i bunden

\* af høj rang

\* ... højeste rang

\* have ...

\* feltmarskal    \* rangere over ng.

\* rangere    \* lige nedenunder

\* hærgeneral                      \* =                      \* over ng.

\* general    \* løjtnant ⇔ \* general-    \* major ⇔ general-

\* brigade-    \* general

\* ~ øverstkommanderende                      \* flåde                      \* admiral

\* højst rangerende

\* højeste rang

\*

\* admiral                      ⇔                      \* flåde-

\* flådeadmiral    \* højst rangerende

\* højst rangerende

\* ~ øverstbefalende

\* rangere    \* lige over ng.

\* vice-                      \* admiral                      \* under-                      \* admiral

\* grad                      \* kaptajn                      \* kommandør

\* løjtnant ⇔ kommandør-                      \* løjtnant ⇔ \* senior-

\* general    \* i flyvevåbnet

\* =    \* løjtnant ⇔ general-

\* rangere på linie med ng.

\* =

\* rangklasse    \* ~ officers befalingsmand

\* oberst    \* rangere under ng.

\* rangere over ng.                      \* oberstløjtnant                      \* major

\* kaptajn    \* løjtnant

\* premiere ...                      \* rangere over                      \* sekund...

\* underofficer ( -sbefalingsmand )

\* sergent                      \* rangere over >                      \* korporal

\* menig soldat    \* =

\* menig ( soldat )    \* rangere lavest

\* forlange / kræve at -

\* beordre ng. til at -

\* provokere ng. til at -    \* overgå sig selv  
( antydende at de ikke tør )

**192** In time(s) of war, people close ranks.

In wartime, people close their ranks about their leaders,

and all ranks are prepared for war.

The officers are in command of the ranks.

They command the rank and file.

When an officer ranks the privates,

he arrange / forms them into ranks and files.

A rookie company is ranked according to height.

The rookies keep ranks, and exert themselves not to break ranks on the march.

**10** The exercises and tasks are ranked in order of difficulty.

It's not as easy to rank recruits in order of ability.  
ri' kru-ts

The ranking officer may put the privates in ranks, to forms a marching order.

At the marching-off, the officer gives / shouts the marching orders.

' Quick march ! ' he orders ( the company )

and the soldiers march off, marching in line.

A squad is a small number of soldiers, commonly 10 men, a corporal and a sergeant and the privates.

**20** Two or more squads form a platoon which is commanded by a lieutenant.

The platoon is part of a company, a group of about 120 soldiers which is commanded by a captain.

Two or more companies and their headquarters form a battalion.

The headquarters is the place from which a military operation is controlled as well as the headquarters are the people working there.

Time marches on and the troops provide for both an attack and withdrawal.

Eventually the headquarters direct / instruct / order that an attack ( E& should ) be launched / made / mounted.

They direct / instruct / order the troops to make an attack.

Having instructed them who to lead the attack, and instructed them where and when to make the attack, the headquarters expect the troops to do as instructed.

' Be ready at dawn,' a ranking officer instructs ( his troops ).

\* ~ i krigstid

\* ~ stå sammen

\* =

\* ~ slutte op omkring ng.

\* officerer og menige

\* forberedt på ngt.

\* ~ have kommandoen over ng.

\* de menige

\* ~ de menige

\* stille ng. på række

\* ordne ng. i række

\* geled

\* nybegynder

\* kompani

\* ordnet

\* højde

\* = \* holde sig på række / geled

\* anstrenge sig for at -

\* komme ud af ...

\* på march

\* øvelse

\* rangordne

\* rangordne ng./ ngt. ...

\* rekrut

\* alt efter

\* befalende

\* sætte ng. på >

\* række

\* danne >

\* march-

\* orden

\* ved >

\* afmarch

\* afgive / råbe >

\* march-

\* ordre

\* fremad march

\* beordre ( ng.)

\* marchere afsted

\* ... >

\* ~ i en række

\* patrulje  
trop

\* hovedkvarteret  
officersstaben

\* deling

\*

\* kompani

\* kaptajn

\* hovedkvarter

\* batallion

\* hovedkvarter  
officersstab

\* operation

\* kontrollere

\* =

\*

\* tiden går

\* ~ indstille sig på / tage højde for ng.

\*

\* bestemme / give instruks om / beordre at -

\* angreb

\* iværksætte <

\* << ng. til at -

\* give ng. instruks / besked om hvxx -

\* =

\* gøre, som man har fået besked på

\* ved daggy

\* anvise / beordre ( ng.)

<b>193 Under the watchful eye of</b> their corporal,	* ~ under nøje opsyn af ng.		
<b>strict discipline is imposed on</b> recruits,	* streng	* disciplin	* pålagt ng.
They learn how to walk and <b>march in step</b> , and <b>keep step</b> .	* marchere	* i takt	* holde takt
The corporal <b>shouts</b> or <b>beats the time</b>	* slå takten		
so the marching recruits don't <b>get out of step</b> .	* komme ud af takt		
If one soldier <b>breaks step</b> , other soldiers <b>fall out of step</b> .	* bryde takten		* falde ud af ...
When they are <b>on the march</b> ,	* på march		
the soldiers <b>carry</b> their <b>marching equipment / kit</b> .	* bære ( på ) >	* marchoppakning	
When they are on <b>a days march</b> , they <b>march at ease</b> .	* dagsmarch		* gå rørmarch
<b>10</b> Sometimes the <b>march pace</b> is <b>forced</b> .	* march-	* hastighed	* forceret, presset op
If a company <b>advances by forced march</b> ,	* rykke frem i >	* forceret	* march ~ ilmarch
it may <b>gain on</b> another platoon or <b>gain a march on</b> it.	* komme en dagsmarch foran		
<b>On parade</b> , the <b>marching column</b>	* i parade	* march-	* kolonne
<b>marches into position</b> forming a <b>front rank</b> ,	* marchere	* i stilling / på plads	* forreste * geled
a <b>centre rank</b> , and a <b>rear rank</b> .	* mellemste ...		* bageste ...
The <b>formation marches past</b> a guest of honour	* formation		* marchere / defilere forbi ngt.
who will <b>review</b> the soldiers.	* mønstre ng.		
<b>Seated</b> in order of <b>precedence</b> , the spectators watch	* få siddeplads		* forrang
the <b>review</b> from a <b>reviewing stand</b> .	* mønstring tropperevy		* mønstringstribune
<b>20</b> After the <b>march-past</b> , the <b>commanding officer</b>	* forbidefilering		* kommanderende
<b>marches</b> the company <b>into</b> the <b>square</b> .	* opmarchere ng.		* plads
A <b>drum major precedes</b> a military <b>band</b> on their march.	* tambur major	* gå foran ng. + adv.	* orkester
The band plays <b>in march time</b> and as the drum major	* i marchtakt		
<b>marks</b> the <b>time</b> , the band plays <b>in time with</b> the drum major.	* markere ngt.	* takt	* i takt med ngt.
The band <b>keep time</b> so no one <b>gets out of time</b> .	* holde takten		* komme ud af takt
The ranks and files <b>march in step with</b> the music	* marchere >		* i takt med ngt.
<b>in marching step</b> .	* marchtakt		
If some soldiers march out of time it <b>offends the eye</b> .	* støde øjet		
A <b>march</b> is a <b>tune</b> in eg. 4 / 4, <b>four-four time</b> or 2 / 4 time,	* march	* melodi	* fire firedels * takt
<b>30 playable</b> in a <b>rhythm</b> people can march to.	* spillelig		* rytme
Playing his ( <b>bag&gt;</b> ) <b>pipes</b> , a player may play a <b>dead march</b> .	* sækkepibe		* sørgemarch
A <b>musician</b> reads the <b>time signature</b> eg. <b>three-four time</b>	* musiker	* taktangivelse	* trefjerdedelstakt
before he plays the <b>notes in the bars</b> E/A <b>measures</b> between	* node		* takt
the <b>barlines</b> in the <b>stave</b> / eA <b>staff</b> consisting of five <b>lines</b> .	* taktstreg	* nodelinjesystem	* ( node-) linie
A <b>tune</b> may be played <b>at pleasure in</b> a certain <b>rhythm</b>	* melodi	* efter forgodtbefindende	* i > * rytme
i.e. with a number of <b>beats</b> ( <b>regularly repeated strokes</b> )	* rytmeslag	* regelmæssigt	* gentagne * slag
<b>in each bar</b> .	* i >		* ( hver ) takt
<b>Noisy</b> music <b>offends</b> many people, and for some	* støjende		* genere ng.
listening to <b>bagpipe</b> music is <b>sheer purgatory / hell</b> .	* sækkepibe	* ren skærsild / det rene helvede	

**194 People of all ranks and classes may go into / join the armed forces, and serve in the ranks.**

...  
A government may **enact that** it provides **the services** with soldiers by **conscription**.

So if **conscript soldiers predominate**, the country will have **conscript armed forces** where the **conscripts** have been ordered to **go into / join** the **services**.

People who are **called up / conscripted** / eA  
kên`skriptid  
**draughted / drafted into** the army, the navy or the air force,  
`draftid  
**10 are called up / conscripted** / = / = **to fight** for their country.

In the US a **draft board** takes care of **the draft** as it selects the **draftees** for military service. *See page 200 !*

A **recruit** is a **private** or **private soldier** (E) who has recently joined the armed forces.

Most people know of people **of their own ranks** who **go into** the **services** and **in times** of **unemployment**  
- `plâi-  
many privates come from **the ranks** of **the unemployed**.

Most unemployed people are **anxious for / to** get a job.

A **common soldier** who **rank for promotion**,  
**20** and is **recommended for promotion**, may be **exalted / promoted** ( **to** ( the **rank of** ) corporal ).

If a **ranker** doesn't **rank among / with** the failures, he may **rise from the ranks**, and **rise to high rank**.

A soldier must **toe the** ( military ) **line** /A& **mark**.

He will be punished if he **commits an offence** E/A **offense**.  
ê`fens

A private may **break** `ranks ( **with** an officer ).

The punishment may be **lenient** if it's a **first offence** and he is a **first offender**.

An officer must be **in step with** ( the ) **general staff**,  
**30** and **in step with** its / their strategy.

**Out of step with** the general staff and its / their strategy, and having **committed a minor offence**, an officer may be **reduced to the ranks** or **cashiered**.

Having **committed a serious** or **criminal offence**, an officer **stands to** be punished and **dismissed in disgrace**.

If a soldier **commits a capital crime / offence** like **desertion** or **treason**, he may be **punished by death**.  
`tri-zên

**Prosecution** for a first minor offence rarely leads to / results in **imprisonment**.

\* folk fra alle samfundslag \* gå ind i / slutte sig til > alle og enhver

\* væbnede styrker \* ~ gøre ( menig ) militærtjeneste

\* indføre ved lov / lovgive at -

\* ~ værnene \* værnepligt udskrivning

\* tvangsudskreven, værnepligtig \* være i overtal

\* værnepligtig \* væbnet \* styrke \* værnepligtig

\* gå ind i > \* militæret

\* udskrive ng. >

\* til ng. \* = >

\* til at -

\* udskrivningskommission \* værnepligtsindkaldelse

\* værnepligtig

\* rekrut \* menig \* ... soldat

\*

\* fra egne rækker

\* træde ind i militæret \* i tider ( med ) \* arbejdsløshed  
gå i militærtjeneste

\* de ...-s rækker \* de arbejdsløse

\* ivrig efter ng. / at -

\* menig ( soldat ) \* rangere til / stå foran > \* forfremmelse

\* ( være ) anbefalet til > \* =

\* forfremme ng. > \* forfremme ng. til > \* rang af ng.

\* menig / ..., der er \* rangere / \* fiasko  
steget i graderne høre til sammen med ng.

\* stige i rang / graderne \* nå høj rang / værdighed

\* holde sig indenfor de autoritative rammer

\* begå en forbrydelse

\* bryde ud af fællesskabet ( sætte sig op imod ng. )

\* mild \* førstegangsforbrydelse

\* førstegangsforbryder

\* i trit med ng. \* general- \* staben

\* ... ng.

\* ude af trit med ng. & ng.

\* begå en mindre forbrydelse

\* degradere til menig \* ~ ( blive ) smidt ud

\* ... alvorlig / kriminel ...

\* stå til at - \* ( blive ) afskediget \* i unåde

\* begå en forbrydelse, der medfører dødsstraf

\* høj- / landsforræderi \* desertion \* få dødsstraf

\* anklage for ng.

\* fængsling

<b>195</b> A military career may <b>appeal</b> ; it <b>appeals to</b> some people.	* ~ virke tiltrækkende	* appellere til ng.
At a <b>military academy</b> students are training for service	* militær	* ~ virke tiltrækkende for ng.
as officers in the <b>armed forces</b> : the army, navy or <b>air force</b> .	* væbnede styrker	* akademi & officerssskole
This academy <b>ranks among</b> the best in the country.	* regnes blandt	* luftvåben
The academy <b>is ranked number one</b> by the public	* rangere ngt. ( som ) noun	
for its fine traditions and <b>cadets</b> graduated from the academy.	* officersaspirant / -elev	
<b>are ranked among</b> the best educated officers.	* være rangeret, ~ regnes blandt ng.	
<b>It seems that</b> the cadets and officers from this academy	* det synes som om at -	
<b>rank well over / above</b> others in <b>tact</b> .	* rangere ( et godt stykke ) over ng.	* takt god opførsel
<b>10</b> The other academies which are <b>ranked second</b>	* rangere på andenpladsen / som nummer to	
or <b>ranks third</b> or <b>ranks lower</b> are less popular.	* ... tredjepladsen / ... tre	
An officer has a <b>responsibility for observing</b> the <b>rules of</b>	* ansvar for at -	* overholde > * regler for >
<b>etiquette</b> , so <b>moving in society</b> , he has a <b>responsibility</b>	* etikette	* færdes i selskabslivet
not to <b>offend against etiquette</b> / ( rules of ) <b>good form</b> (o-f).	* takt og tone	* pligt til at -
An officer may be <b>in dispute with</b> a pacifist.	* forbyrde sig mod ngt.	* - = -
In order to <b>settle a dispute</b> , the <b>parties to a dispute</b> must	* være >	* diskussion / konflikt med ng.
be willing to <b>agree to differ</b> even if a problem is still <b>in dispute</b> .	* bilægge >	* strid
Besides their military <b>vocational training</b> , some <b>cadets</b>	* part i ngt.	* strid ~ de stridende parter
<b>get an education</b> in <b>academic subjects</b> as <b>arts</b> or science	* være enige om at være forskellige	* til debat
<b>20</b> which may <b>take</b> ( a lot of ) ( <b>self-</b> ) <b>discipline</b> to <b>complete</b> .	* erhvervsfaglig uddannelse	* officerselev
Besides being <b>instructed</b> by officers, the cadets are	* få > * uddannelse	* akademisk * emne
educated by ordinary <b>teachers</b> who <b>received</b> their	* ~ kræve >	* ( selv-) disciplin
<b>teacher training concurrently with times at</b>	* & undervise ng.	* ~ ånds- / kulturvidenskaber
a <b>teacher-training college</b> , now called	* skolelærer	* fuldføre
a <b>college of education</b> (A: <b>teachers' college</b> ).	* lærer undervisning	
Some teachers <b>receive</b> their <b>education</b> and <b>training</b>	* lærerseminarium	
at a <b>university</b> or <b>college</b> .	* =	
You may study <b>art history</b> , <b>art of medicine</b> ,	* få / modtage >	* uddannelse
( <b>the</b> ) <b>social science(s)</b> ( psychology, politics )	* universitet	* træning oplæring
<b>30</b> ( <b>the</b> ) <b>natural science(s)</b> ( <b>botany</b> , <b>zoology</b> ),	* kunsthistorie	* højere læreanstalt
( <b>the</b> ) <b>physical science(s)</b> ( <b>physics</b> , <b>chemistry</b> ),	* samfundsvidenskab	* lægekunst
and ( <b>the</b> ) <b>applied science(s)</b> ( eg. <b>engineering</b> ).	* naturvidenskab	* botanik
Having <b>been educated at</b> and <b>graduated from</b> a university	* naturlære	* zoologi
or college, a <b>graduate</b> may <b>apply for</b> a job as a university	* anvendt ~ polyteknisk	* fysik
or college teacher or as a <b>teacher trainer</b> .	* være / blive uddannet ved ...	* kemi
The <b>director</b> will <b>demand to</b> see the <b>applicant's diploma</b> .	* taget eksamen fra ...	
Being <b>educated</b> and having maybe <b>taught in</b> different	* færdiguddannet person	* søge om ( job )
<b>settings</b> , a teacher may <b>teach</b> ( the students ) (a) <b>language</b>	* seminarielærer	
or theoretical subjects at an <b>academy</b> or <b>college</b> .	* ~ leder	* forlange at -
	* være uddannet	* ansøger * eksamensbevis
	* omgivelser /	* undervise ( ng. ) i ngt.
	* akademi, ~ højere læreanstalt	* ( et ) sprog niveau

**196** The cadets learn about all kinds of **weapons of offence**,  
è`fens  
 used during an attack, and all kinds of **weapons of defence**  
di`fens  
 used during **defence** (U) of military or civil **targets**.

In order to **discriminate** / **distinguish** friend **from** enemy,  
di`skrimineit di`stingwi\$  
 and **discriminate** / **distinguish between** friend **and** enemy,  
 they learn to **discriminate** / **distinguish** various **features**,  
 which **differentiate** / **discriminate** friend **from** enemy.

The cadets study both **defensive** and **offensive weapons**  
di`fensiv è`fensiv  
 as well as **offensive** ( or **aggressive** ) and **defensive wars**.

**10** An officer of a civilized country should have a firm  
**commitment to** ( **advocating** ) the **defence of** human rights.

Participating in a debate, a cadet should always be able to  
 explain and **defend** his views in a **full** and **frank discussion**.

A '**conscientious objector** and a '**pacifist**, and perhaps  
èb`d\$ektè  
 a '**draft dodger** who has **dodged** his military **service**  
 believe that killing is **morally indefensible**.

**Distancing themselves from** violence and believing that  
 killing is never **ethically defensible**, they **defend** their **right to**  
`e#ikèli  
 refuse to **carry / bear arms** for ethical and moral reasons.

**20** Pacifists **reply to** aggression **with non-violence**.

As the **constitution** protects the citizens' right to  
**defend** their **interests**, nobody has to **yield to pressure**  
 and **give way** ( **to** anybody ) **without** { ( further ) **argument /**  
**replying** ( **to** their arguments ) ( **with counterarguments** ).

**Pressure** should **yield / give way to argument** (<ation).

Among other **defensive strategies** pacifists believe that  
 humour is often a more effective **defence** than violence.

Modern knowledge of the **psychology** of **motivation** tells  
 the officers to **set great store by positive reinforcement**  
ri~in`få~sment  
**30** rather than **by negative reinforcement**.

One of the teachers is a '**downright** and **forthright** fellow  
 with **plain common sense** and **downright** manners.

He **takes a forthright glance at** every cadet.

He sees **forthwith** when it would be **sheer folly to go**  
 into action and tells people **forthrightly** what are  
 his **objections** without **causing offence to** them.

' **To be frank with you,**' he would say, ' I think you have  
**made a blunder // made a gaffe // done a stupid thing //**  
gaf  
**put your foot in it E /A& in your mouth .**

\* offensive / angrebs- våben  
 \* defensive / forsvars-  
 \* forsvar \* mål  
 \* skelne ng. fra ng.  
 \* kunne skelne mellem ng. og ng.  
 \* skelne ngt.  
 \* ngt. adskiller ng. fra ng.  
 \* forsvars- \* angrebsvåben  
 \* angrebs- \* forsvars- \* krig  
 \*  
 \* engagement i / ( være fortaler for > ) \* forsvar af ngt.  
 forpligtelse overfor ( at ) >  
 \*  
 \* forsvare > \* syns- \* fuld- \* åben- \* diskussion  
 punkt stændig hjertig  
 \* militærnægter \* pacifist  
 \* militærunddrager \* unddrage sig > \* tjeneste  
 \* moralsk \* uforsvarlig  
 \* tage afstand fra ngt.  
 \* etisk \* forsvarligt \* forsvare ngs. ret til at -  
 \* bære > \* våben  
 \* svare / reagere på ( aggression ) \* ikke-vold  
 \* forfatning  
 grundlov  
 \* forsvare > \* interesse \* give efter for ngt. \* pres  
 \* give efter ( \* for ng. ) \* uden > \* argumenteren  
 bøje sig & videre ( ... )  
 \* at tage til genmæle / \* overfor / \* med ngt. \* mod-  
 reagere på ngt. argument  
 \* pres \* vige for ngt. \* argumenteren  
 ( argumentation )  
 \* forsvarsstrategi  
 \* forsvar  
 \* psykologi \* motivation  
 \* lægge stor vægt på ngt. \* positiv \* forstærkning  
 ~ belønning  
 \* negativ ... ( ~ straf )  
 \* ligefrem \* =  
 åbenhjertig  
 \* almindelig > \* sund > \* fornuft \* =  
 \* kaste et > \* direkte \* blik på ng.  
 \* straks \* ren og skær \* dumhed at -  
 \* åbenhjertligt \* indvending  
 modvilje  
 \* påføre ng. fornærmelse / krænkelse  
 ( fornærme, krænke ng. )  
 \* for at være åbenhjertig overfor ng.  
 \* begå en dumhed / fejltrin  
 \* =





<b>198</b> When a <b>class</b> is <b>dismissed</b> in the <b>afternoon</b> , some cadets <b>go to</b> the academy <b>library</b> .	* klasse * gå på >	* give ng. fri ~ få fri	* om eftermiddagen * bibliotek
The books are <b>grouped according</b> to <b>fiction</b> or non-fiction, and the non-fiction books are <b>grouped together by</b> subject.	* grupperet * ~ grupperet	* i henhold til ngt. * skønlitteratur * ~ ud fra ( emne )	* fiktion * skønlitteratur
<b>In</b> the <b>library</b> a couple of <b>chess players</b> <b>rank</b> the <b>chessmen</b> in <b>ranks and files</b> on the <b>chessboard</b> .	* på > * opstille > * bonde * officer * løber	* bibliotek * skakbrikker * ( være ) anbragt * hest	* skakspiller * i række * på skakbræt og geled * på bræt * bageste række * tårn
The <b>pawns</b> are <b>positioned</b> in the <b>front rank</b> on the <b>board</b> , and the <b>pieces</b> in the <b>rear rank</b> : the king, the queen, the queen's <b>bishop</b> , queen's <b>knight</b> , queen's <b>castle</b> or <b>rook</b> .	* rangere på linie med ng. * =		
<b>10</b> The coming chess <b>turnament ranks with</b> one of the greatest ever made; it <b>ranks alongside</b> the greatest.	* dagens * skak	* rangere som / ~anses for ngt. * enestående ( spiller )	* spil * < spillet
<b>Today's</b> match <b>ranks as</b> one of the most exciting <b>games</b> ( of <b>chess</b> ) that two <b>outranking</b> players have ever <b>played</b> .	* rangere et godt stykke over ng.		
<b>Ranking well ahead of</b> the other players, these two <b>top-ranked</b> players are <b>at the height</b> of their <b>career</b> .	* toprangeret * højst rangerende	* på højdepunktet af >	* karriere
One of them is the currently the <b>highest ranked</b> player <b>whilst</b> the other one <b>ranks</b> second on the national record list.	* mens, hvorimod * være rangeret som > * sejr		* rangere som ngt. * nummer * et
The other one <b>is ranked number one</b> at the Academy although his last <b>win</b> doesn't rank with his greatest <b>win</b> .	* ~ sige skak * stille / sætte ng. skakmat * ... ng's konge ...		* være ...
<b>20</b> When a player <b>gives check</b> , his opponent is <b>in check</b> . A player ( <b>check&gt;</b> ) <b>mates</b> his opponent by ( <b>check&gt;</b> ) <b>mating</b> his opponent's king. <u>Se side 200!</u>	* vinde ( en kamp ) * rangere / regnes på linie med ngt. * << * spille > * ... mindre ... * en brik i spillet * ordne ngt. * slæbe af med ngt. * udbytterig * låne ( en bog ) > * synes at være ngt. * sådan syntes det * plage *	* ~ uden kamp ved manglende fremmøde * værdssætte ngt. højere end ngt. * værdssætte ngt. højere end ngt. * alfabetisk * biblioteksbog * tid * fra / på biblioteket * & tilsyneladende ( sove ) * slæbe ng. ud af ngt.	
A game, match or competition can be <b>won</b> or <b>lost by default</b> . Considering chess to <b>rank alongside</b> other sports some people want chess to <b>rank with</b> other sports.			
People who <b>play chess</b> usually <b>rank</b> chess <b>over</b> cards while others <b>rank</b> chess below cards.			
Some people <b>are only a pawn in the game</b> . The books are <b>ranked</b> in <b>alphabetical</b> order.			
<b>30</b> A few soldiers <b>march off with</b> a lot of <b>library books</b> . hoping to spend a <b>profitable time</b> reading.			
A cadet <b>took out / borrowed</b> a book <b>from</b> the library which <b>seemed to be</b> interesting.			
It <b>seemed so</b> , but now he <b>seems to be</b> asleep. If you're a <b>nuisance</b> , the <b>librarian</b> will <b>march</b> you <b>out of</b> the library.			
Several <b>pairs</b> of <b>boots</b> are <b>ranked</b> outside the library. If borrowers <b>exceed</b> the <b>time limit</b> , they must <b>pay</b> a <b>fine</b> when they <b>return</b> the <b>overdue</b> books.	* par * overskride > * tilbagelevere ngt.	* støvle * tidsgrænse * forfalden til aflevering ~ ikke i tide afleveret	* stille ngt. på række * betale > * bøde

199 When the cadets <b>train rowing</b> (U), and <b>exercise in it</b> ,	* op- / øve / træne ngt.	* træne / motionere i ngt.
they <b>keep the stroke</b> , and <b>exercise</b> their <b>muscles</b> .	* holde rytmen	* træne > * muskler
They learn about smaller engines, or <b>motors</b> , usually	* motor	
<b>electric motors</b> or <b>electromotors</b> , and bigger 2- and 4- <b>stroke</b>	* elektromotor	* = * ( 2- & 4- ) takts
<b>internal-combustion engines</b> having <b>combustion chambers</b>	* indre- * forbrændings- * motor * ...- * kammer ~ eksplotionsmotor	
with <b>inlets</b> ( or <b>feeds</b> ) and <b>outlets</b> for <b>fuel</b> and air.	* indløbsvej * ~ fødeledning * udløbsvej * brændstof	
A <b>battery</b> / an <b>accumulator</b> <b>actuates</b> a ( <b>starter</b> ) <b>motor</b> .	* batteri / akkumulator * igangsætte > * ( start- ) motor	
All the cadets hope the <b>teacher's report</b> is good.	* lærerens	* ~ vidnesbyrd
Some military <b>units</b> <b>educate</b> and <b>instruct</b> animals	* enhed * uddanne > * træne ( dyr )	
10 as they <b>educate</b> dogs to <b>carry out instructions</b> .	* oplære ng. til at - * udføre > * instruktion anvisning	
A <b>retriever</b> is <b>trained</b> and <b>instructed</b> to <b>retrieve</b> .	* retriever * trænet > * instrueret / * tilbagebringe oplæret i at -	
The dog <b>retrieves</b> a <b>kill</b> ( an animal or animals killed )	* ... >	* dræbt dyr
or <b>dispatches</b> a <b>wounded</b> animal.	* gøre det af med / * såret dræbe ng.	
The <b>retrieval</b> of lost property is improved by dogs.	* det at få ngt. igen	
People often <b>retrieve</b> a piece of lost property	* få ngt. tilbage	
considered to be <b>beyond retrieval</b> and <b>past retrieval</b> .	* umuligt at få tilbage * = fortabt	
<b>On one occasion</b> , there was a <b>bit of</b> a <b>cock-up</b> (eE)	* ~ ved en lejlighed * en smule ( af ) > * kludder	
over a <b>hunting / shooting party</b> .	* jagtselskab	
For example, when one of the hunters <b>cocked</b> his head	* hæve ngt.	
20 to one side to <b>aim at</b> a <b>deer</b> ( a <b>buck</b> as they don't hunt	* sigte på ngt. * hjort * buk	
<b>doe</b> and <b>hind</b> , and he wouldn't shoot a <b>doe</b> or a <b>hind</b> ).	* då, rådyrhun * hind * = * = ( & hunhare / -kanin ) kronhjortehun	
As the <b>buck</b> or <b>stag</b> stood listening, its <b>ears cocked</b> ,	* buk * hanhjort * med rejste ører	
and the hunter <b>cocked</b> his <b>gun</b> ( <b>raised</b> the <b>hammer of</b>	* spænde hanen ( på et skydevåben ) * =	
his <b>sporting gun</b> ), his young and still <b>unbalanced gundog</b>	* jagtbøsse / -gevær * utilregnelig * jagthund	
suddenly <b>cocked</b> its leg <b>by</b> his leg and <b>shooting boot</b> .	* løfte ben * op ad ngt. * jagtstøvle	
<b>Startled by</b> a sudden warm and wet sensation, he <b>missed</b> .	* forskrække ng.	
He <b>missed</b> ( hitting ) the <b>target / game</b> .	* ramme forbi * ... ngt. * mål / vildt	
His shot <b>went astray</b> and the game <b>got away unhurt</b> .	* ~ ramme forbi ( målet ) * slippe væk * uskadt	
Speechless with surprise, he <b>cocked</b> a <b>quizzical eyebrow</b>	* hæve > * undrende * øjenbryn	
<b>at</b> his dog as it <b>cocked</b> its <b>ears</b> looking <b>innocently</b> at him.	* mod ng. * rejse ørerne * uskyldigt	
30 Some of his hunting / shooting <b>mates</b> <b>made</b> a good <b>bag</b> .	* kammeret * få > * ~ et godt jagtudbytte	
A few drinks after the shooting <b>livened</b> ( ) <b>up</b> the party.	* live ngt. op	
People had a <b>quizzical</b> smile on their faces,	* forundret lettere muntert	
and the party really <b>livened up</b> as he <b>disclosed / revealed</b>	* live op	
the story behind his <b>miss</b> / his <b>missed shot</b> .	* forbier / fejlskud	
<b>Making</b> no <b>bag</b> , he had to admit that his dog really	* ~ ikke få noget jagtudbytte	
<b>cocked</b> ( ) <b>up</b> that exam and needed a <b>little</b> /eE a <b>bit</b> more	* forkludre ngt. * en smule	
education to become a perfect <b>hunting / sporting dog</b> .	* jagt- * hund	
Buks are aggressive when <b>in</b> ( the ) <b>rut</b> .	* i brunst	

ad 117 ) The love and **unfailing support** of his mother  
**sustain** him during his time of **uncertainty**.

\* aldrig svigtende \* støtte  
\* holde ng. oppe \* usikkerhed

ad 141 ) Having to **solve** a **mathematical problem**,  
he may have to solve an **arithmetical**, an **algebraic**  
or a **geometric(al)** problem.

\* løse > \* matematisk \* problem  
~ matematikopgave  
\* aritmetisk \* algebraisk  
\* geometrisk

**Examining** the students in their **homework**,  
the teacher may **examine** them **on related subjects** too.

\* eksaminere / prøve / høre ng. i ngt. \* hjemmearbejde  
lektier  
\* = \* tilknyttet \* emne

ad 143 ) They **apply to** the bank **for a rollover**.  
as they hope the bank will agree to **roll ( ) over** their **debt**.  
Fortunately the bank **allows** them a **rollover**.

\* henvende sig til ng. / \* ~ gældsudsættelse  
~ ansøge ng. om ngt.  
\* udsætte > \* gæld  
\* bevillige ng. > \* <<

ad 168 ) In the 19<sup>th</sup> century, the middle classes rose  
to form **the bourgeoisie** which, in politics,  
formed the **capitalist class** in opposition to the **proletariat**.  
prêuli`teêriêt

\*  
\* bourgeoisiet, borgerskabet  
\* kapitalistisk \* klasse \* proletariat

A **bourgeois** (= pl.) and a **bourgeoise** belong to  
the bourgeoisie.  
`buê\$wā~ / -`\$wā~ `buê\$wā~z / -`\$wā~z

\* mand fra borgerklassen \* kvinde ...  
\*

A **petit / petty bourgeois** belongs to the lower middle class,  
and as a member of **the petit / petty bourgeoisie**  
and having a **petit / petty bourgeois** mentality, they pay  
too much attention to position, money, possessions etc.

\* småborger  
\* småborgerskabet  
\* småborgerlig  
\*

In socialist literature, a **proletarian** is a member of the class  
of workers who own no property and works for wages.

\* proletar

A proletarian may have a **proletarian** mentality.

\* proletarisk

Ad 194 )

When the young people **appear** before a **medical board**,  
a doctor E/A **physician assesses** them **as** either **fit** or **unfit**  
**for** service.

\* ~ være på session  
\* vurdere ng. som ngt. \* egnet / uegnet >  
\* til ( militærtjeneste )

Ad 198 )

When a player **gives ( check> ) mate ( to** his opponent ),  
his opponent is **checkmate**.

\* ~ stille / sætte ( ng. ) skakmat  
\* skakmat

A competition, a game or match, may **end in a tie / draw**  
as a game of chess ending in (a) **stalemate** in.

\* ende > \* ~ uafgjort  
\* pat

